# **Caterease Software**

Version 12.5 User's Guide

© Copyright 2013 Horizon Business Services, Inc.

# Table of Contents

UNIT 1: EVENT MANAGER	
EVENT MANAGER INTRODUCTION	_ 9 _
EVENT MANAGER SUB-EVENT DISPLAY	10 -
UNIT 2: NAVIGATION TOOLS	11 -
NAVIGATION BAR	- 13 -
Event Finder	- 14 -
Using the "Go To" Tool	- 15 -
UNIT 3: BOOKING A NEW EVENT IN EVENT MANAGER	17 -
DOORNG A NEW EVENT FOR AN EVENTING CHETOMER FROM EVENT MANAGER	
BOOKING A INEW EVENT FOR AN EXISTING CUSTOMER FROM EVENT MANAGER	
SEARCHING F UR ACCOUNTS	
ENTERING EVENT INFORMATION	
FILLING IN EVENT INFORMATION. ADDING CONTACTS	
EVENT DATE	- 24 -
A SUB-FVENT	- 25 -
TIMF WIZARD	- 26 -
SELECTING A NEW ROOM	- 27 -
ROOM SELECTION WIZARD.	- 28 -
Copying Setup Notes from the Scratch Pad	- 29 -
Working with Site Location and Directions	- 30 -
Selecting Food/Service Menus	31 -
Generating a Print	32 -
E-MAILING A PRINT (SEE IMAGE ON NEXT PAGE)	33 -
UNIT 4: EVENT SCHEDULER	35 -
EVENT SCHEDHLED INTRODUCTION	37
Chancing Scheduler Introduction	
GRAUDING THE CALENDAR	- 30 -
ADDING NOTES TO THE SCHEDULER	- 40 -
UNIT 5: ADVANCED MENU FEATURES	- 41 -
	12
USING THE INSERT MODE WHEN RETRIEVING MENU ITEMS	
REIRIEVING MENU PACKAGES INTO AN EVENT	
ADDING AND MODIF TING MENU TIEM DESCRIPTIONS	
ADDING A IVEW F OUD/SERVICE HEM	
GENERATING AN INCREDIENTS I IST	- 40 -
Generating a Reouired Item List	- 50 -
UNIT 6: SHIFTS, STAFFING, AND COMMENTS	51 -
ADDING STAFFING TO AN EVENT	52
ADDING STAFFING TO AN EVENT	- 53 - 54
ADDING SHIFTS TO AN EVENT	- 54 -
COPTING EVENT COMMENTS FROM THE SCRATCH TAD	
UNIT 7: BOOKING A NEW EVENT USING THE EVENT WIZARD	57 -
The Event Wizard Screen	59 -
STEP ONE: SELECTING AN ACCOUNT	- 60 -
Step Two: Entering Basic Details	61 -
TIME WIZARD	- 62 -
ENTERING ROOM DETAILS	- 63 -
ROOM SELECTION WIZARD.	- 64 -
STEP THREE: RETRIEVING MENU ITEMS	65 -
SAVING THE EVENT	66 -
UNIT 8: BOOKING A NEW EVENT FROM THE SCHEDULER	67 -

VIEWING THE SUB-EVENTS SCHEDULER	69 -
MODIFYING EVENT INFORMATION	70 -
ACCESSING EVENT WIZARD FROM THE SUB-EVENT CALENDAR	/1-
UNIT 9: BOOKING A NEW EVENT FROM ACCOUNT MANAGER	73 -
ACCOUNT MANAGER SCREEN Adding Events from Account Manager	- 75 - - 76 -
UNIT 10: ADDING A NEW ACCOUNT IN ACCOUNT MANAGER	77 -
FILLING OUT THE MISCELLANEOUS TAB	- 80 -
ADDING CONTACTS TO AN ACCOUNT	81 -
UNIT 11: ADDING AN ACCOUNT IN EVENT WIZARD	- 83 -
ADDING AN ACCOUNT IN EVENT WIZARD	85 -
ADDING A CONTACT PERSON	86 -
UNIT 12: ADDING A NEW ACCOUNT IN OTHER WAYS	87 -
Adding a New Account in Event Manager Adding a New Customer Who is Not a Company	- 89 - - 90 -
ΙΙΝΙΤ 13: ΔΟΥΔΝΟΈΟ ΔΟΟΟΙΙΝΤ ΜΑΝΔΩΈΜΕΝΤ	- 91 -
DELETING A CURRENT ACCOUNT	- 93 - 04
VIEWING OR EDITING EVENTS	- 95 -
Generating a Billing Statement	- 96 -
Generating Reports from Account Manager	97 -
POSTING PAYMENTS TO AN ACCOUNT	98 -
Combining Duplicate Accounts	100 -
CREATING A DEFAULT SITE LOCATION	101 -
UNIT 14: CUSTOMIZING THE SCREEN DISPLAY	
Customizing Fields in Account Manager	105 -
CUSTOMIZING THE SCREEN DISPLAY IN EVENT MANAGER	106 -
USING THE SPLIT SCREEN IN EVENT MANAGER	107 -
ACCESSING THE FULL-EXPAND MODE	108 -
CUSTOMIZING THE SUB-EVENT SCREEN DISPLAY IN EVENT MANAGER	109 -
CUSTOMIZING THE SUB-EVENT SCREEN LAYOUT	110 -
CREATING A CUSTOM LAYOUT	111 -
UNIT 15: EVENT MANAGER TOOLS	
The Event Manager Toolbar	115 -
Using the Event Checklist	116 -
Using the Event Timeline	117 -
DISPLAYING EVENT TAX/SERVICE CHARGE RATES	118 -
GETTING DRIVING DIRECTIONS	120 -
CLICK 10 GET DIRECTIONSPOSTING PAYMENTS TO AN EVENT.	120 -
A DDING SCHEDULED DEPOSITS FOR AN EVENT	- 122 -
CHECKING EVENT STATUS HISTORY	- 123 -
VIEWING RELATED EVENTS	- 125 -
Using Required Items	126 -
Using Event-Related Files	127 -
APPLYING EVENT DISCOUNT RATES	128 -
MANAGING MULTIPLE EVENTS SIMULTANEOUSLY	129 -
COPYING AN EVENT	130 -
UNIT 16: TRACKING CURRENT EVENTS	- 133 -
RUNNING A CURRENT EVENTS QUERY	135 -
CUSTOMIZING THE GRID	136 -
Sorting and Grouping Grid Data	137 -
SAVING THE GRID VIEW	139 -
CREATING THE GRID FILTER	140 -

SAVING THE GRID FILTER	142 -
PRINTING/EXPORTING GRID DATA	- 143 -
MULTIPLE/BATCH PRINTING	- 144 - 146
L'MAILING IN A BATCH	- 147 -
VIEWING GRID RESULTS IN LAYOUT VIEW	148 -
GENERATING THE CLIENT CONTACTS QUERY	149 -
GENERATING THE ACCOUNTS RECEIVABLE QUERY	150 -
RUNNING THE ACCOUNTS RECEIVABLE REPORT	- 151 -
UNIT 17: USING THE EVENTS QUERY	153 -
QUERYING EVENTS	155 -
SAVING CUSTOM QUERIES	156 -
EDITING AN EVENTS QUERY IN A BATCH	
UNIT 18: ACTIVITY QUERIES VS. REPORTS	159 -
FOOD SERVICE ACTIVITY QUERY	161 -
FOOD SERVICE ACTIVITY QUERY RESULTS SCREEN	162 -
I RACKING F OOD/SERVICE ITEMS IN EXPRESS AND STANDARD VERSIONS Running the Payments Activity Oliery	- 103 - - 164 -
VIEWING THE RESULTS OF A PAYMENT ACTIVITY OUERY	165 -
TRACKING PAYMENTS ITEMS IN EXPRESS AND STANDARD VERSIONS	166 -
UNIT 19: PROSPECT MANAGER	167 -
	160
Estarlishing a Filter	- 171 -
SAVING A FILTER	172 -
UNIT 20: CONTACT MANAGER	173 -
ΤΗΕ CONTACT MANAGER ΜΟΠΙΙΙΕ	- 175 -
Adding Reminders through Event Manager	176 -
Adding Contact History through Event Manager	177 -
Contact History: Auto-Save	178 -
CREATING AUTO-REMINDERS	180 -
INSERTING MERGE FIELDS INTO AN AUTO-KEMINDER MESSAGE	- 181 -
VIEWING REMINDERS IN A CALENDAR	- 183 -
UNIT 21: MARKETING TOOLS	185 -
Using Marketing Tools	- 187 -
INSERTING IMAGES INTO MERGE DOCUMENTS	- 188 -
INSERTING TABLES INTO MERGE DOCUMENTS	190 -
INSERTING DYNAMIC MERGE TABLES	191 -
UNIT 22: USING THE PRINT DESIGNER	193 -
USING THE PRINT DESIGNER	195 -
CUSTOMIZING TEXT BLOCKS IN A PRINT	- 198 -
FORMATTING FOOD/SERVICE ITEMS IN A PRINT	199 -
ADVANCED PRINT SETTINGS Using the Miscell aneous Prints Designer	- 201 -
UNIT 23. ADDING MENUS AND MENU ITEMS	- 203 -
A New Menos AND MENO TIEMIS	- 205 -
ADDING INEW INENUS	- 205 - 206
CREATING MENU PACKAGES (SEE IMAGE ON FOLLOWING PAGE)	- 200 -
UNIT 24: ESTABLISHING SYSTEM SECURITY	- 209 -
SETTING UP SECURITY	_ 211 _
Adding Users and Passwords	- 212 -
ESTABLISHING INDIVIDUAL ACCESS RIGHTS	213 -
CREATING USER GROUPS	214 -

UNIT 25: GENERAL PROGRAM SETUP	215 -
Adding Items to the Quickpick Lists	217 -
CUSTOMIZING NAME FIELDS	218 -
Creating Required Fields	219 -
Creating User-Defined Fields	220 -
INPUTTING USER-DEFINED FIELDS	221 -
CREATING NEW BOOKING DEFAULTS	- 222 -
Setting Tax/Service Charge Defaults	- 223 -
Using a Default Deposit Schedule	224 -
CREATING A DEFAULT EVENT TIMELINE	225 -
ACCESSING THE GLOBAL SETTINGS MANAGERS TAB	227 -
GLOBAL SETTINGS: FIELDS TAB	230 -
Setting up the Scratch Pad	232 -
USING THE SITE LOCATION DATABASE	233 -
ADDING BANQUET ROOMS AND AVAILABLE SETUP STYLES	234 -
Assigning Setup Styles and Capacities	236 -
BANQUET ROOM BLOCKING	
UNIT 26: THE BACKSTAGE TAB	- 239 -
USING THE BACKSTAGE TAB	241 -
UNIT 27: BACKING UP DATA AND MANAGING DELETED EVENTS	- 243 -
Performing a Backup	245 -
BACKING UP YOUR BACKUP	246 -
Archiving Your Events	247 -
TRACKING DELETED EVENTS	248 -
PRINTS & REPORTS	251 -
General	251 -
Window	251 -
EVENT ACTIVITY	251 -
Forecasting	252 -
Financials	253 -
MANAGEMENT	253 -
Graphs	254 -
Accounts	254 -
Contact Manager	- 254 -
Menu Manager	255 -
GUESTROOMS MANAGER	255 -

# **SECTION 1: Events**

## **Unit 1: Event Manager**

Topics covered in this unit include:

Introducing the Event Manager Exploring the Event Display Exploring the Sub-Event Display

Event and	Sub-Event Displays				Deta	il Grid Tools	
Event Manager: A	Acoustics Associates # E00257					- = :	x
		🕴 🛄 Layouts 🕶	🗄 🐻 Go To 🖲	6/19/2013	👻 🕴 😼 Setting:	- 🖬 🖽 🛲	Ŧ
-Client/Organization	n Information			ls			
Client/Organizat	ion Acoustics Associates		Subto	tal		\$245.00	1
Address	1661 Estero Blvd		Serv C	ihg		\$0.00	
	Ft. Myers, FL 33931		Tax	-		\$24.50	
Telephone	(612) 544-8901		Total			\$269.50	
Fax	(612) 544-2928		Cost	Per Guest		\$0.00	
General Miscellar	p-Event		······ <b>▲</b>			💉 Allerg	У
Party Name	Company Lunch		Event #	E00257			
Sales Rep	John Smith	<b>.</b>	Date	6/19/2013	•	Wednesday	
Theme	Banquet	-	Status	Definite		•	
Category	Social	<b>*</b>	Planned	25	Booked 4/1	6/2013 🔹	
Booking Contact	Grover, Rochelle	<b>*</b>	Actual	25	Revised 6/1	9/2013 (10:39 am)	
Site Contact	Grover, Rochelle	•	Guaranteed	22			
Notes Each table will	have a flower arrangement.		·				
	🤇 🕂 🖶 🖧 🖬 🚽 🕈	¥ 🌮 🔍 🗄 🖻	🕅 🖳 🛛 🖓	😻 🔽 🔗	% 🔀 📑 🏚	19 10 10 10 10	)

Évent Manager Toolbar

## **Event Manager Introduction**

The Event Manager is the heart of the Caterease program. This is the place to go when you want to review an existing event in detail, modify an existing event, or add a new event. You can also generate numerous prints from Event Manager, including the Contract, Invoice, or Banquet Event Order (BEO) for a particular event. Even if you choose to add a new event using the Event Wizard (discussed later in this guide), the process will ultimately lead you to the Event Manager screen.

The Event Manager has two main displays: Event and Sub-Event. The Event display allows you to view or edit any general event information, such as party name, theme, guest count, event date, etc. The Sub-Event display allows you to enter more specific event details, such as event times, event venue, food and service items, staffing, etc.

As with the other "Managers" in the program, the Event Manager makes use of the main Caterease toolbars at the top of the screen. Buttons on these toolbars allow you to add or delete events, search for a particular event, navigate quickly from one event to another, and perform a host of other powerful tasks. You can even generate a print of the Manager screen you are viewing or access the program's on-board Help menu for assistance.



Sub-Event Tabs

Sub-Event Food/Service Items

## **Event Manager Sub-Event Display**

Every event has at least one sub-event, which contains the specifics (times, menu, function, space) of that event. In other cases, a sub-event is just what it sounds like: a small part of a larger event. For example, you might have an all-day function that is made up of, say, three sub-events: a "breakfast," a "lunch," and a "dinner." Or, you may have a single function that takes place over multiple days, and each day could be an individual sub-event. Since you can rename the term "Sub-Event," as it appears in Caterease, as anything you want, you might also use this feature to create multiple proposals for an event.

# **Unit 2: Navigation Tools**

Topics covered in this unit include:

Introducing the Navigation Bar Using the Event Finder Tool Using the Go-To Tool

## **Navigation Bar**

#### What is the purpose of the Navigation bar?

The navigation buttons help you move through the Event Manager database.

By default, your Event Manager screen displays the current event or, if no event is scheduled for "today," the closest event to today.

From Event Manager, follow the guidelines below to locate an event:

- 1. Click the **Next** arrow **b** to move forward to the next event.
- 2. Click the **Prior** arrow **I** to move to the previous event.
- 3. Click the **Next Page** arrow  $\triangleright$  to move forward to the bottom of the Detail Grid view. *Note:* The records in Event Manager are based on a table of records which display chronologically in a grid. "Next Page" refers to the last record on that page. See Unit 14 for additional information about Grid Views.
- 4. Click the **Prior Page** arrow **I** to move back to the previous page of the Detail Grid view.
- 5. Click the Last arrow **I** to move to the last customer located in the Detail Grid view.
- 6. Click the **First** arrow **I** to move to the first customer in the Detail Grid view.

🧕 🖬 🎝 🗶		
Hon	ne Select Reports Display Administration Help	* 🤅
Paste Undo	Arial     11     A     Image: Constraint of the second s	ngs Close
Clipboard	Basic Text Editing 🕫 Print/Email Navigate Data Windows	
Event Manager 🗴		
Main		

## **Event Finder**

#### What is the Event Finder?

The Event Finder is a powerful tool to locate existing events in your program. You can search by various criteria, search in a backward or forward direction from your current position, and even display a list of all records that matched your search.

#### **Finding an Event**

- 1. Click the **Find** button *(inclusion)*, located on the **Home** ribbon tab at the top of your Caterease screen.
- 2. In the Search By Fields area, type the text you would like to search for. *Note:* You may search by more than one field.
- 3. In the Search Rules field, select the appropriate rule.
- 4. **[Optional**] Click the radio button next to And or Or, within the Multiple Field Operator section, if you are searching by multiple search criteria.
- 5. **[Optional]** Click the Include Prefixes checkbox and then type the prefix (a, an, the) into the Search Prefixes section to include prefixes in your search.
- 6. Click the **Find Records** button. *Note:* If the first match is not the record you are seeking, you can click **Find Records** again.
- 7. Once your record is located, click **Close**.

Chear Criteria Show Results   Search By Fields Search Rules   Event Fields Starts With   Event Tate Starts With   Event Date Sounds Like   Party Name gnore Case   Client/Orgai City   St/Prov And   Or Search Prefixes   Theme Sales Rep   Sales Rep Search Prefixes   Theme Include Prefixes   Allergy Include Prefixes   The Search Prefixes   The Close	Type what you want to search for	Displays all matches for your search
Show Results   Search B) Fields   Event Fields   Event Fields   Event Date   Status   Party Name   Client/Orgai   City   St/Prov   Category   Theme   Sales Rep   Formatted Text   Notes   Allergy   Status   Description   Date   Setup Style   Room   Auto Complete Key Numbers   Find Records   Close	Event Finder	x
Search By Fields   Event Fields   Event Fields   Event Date   Status   Party Name   Client/Orgai   City   St/Prov   Category   Theme   Sales Rep   Formatted Text   Notes   Allergy   Stub-Event Fields   Description   Date   Setup Style   Room   Auto Complete Key Numbers     Find Records     Close	🧳 Clear Criteria	Show Results 🗕
<ul> <li>Event Fields</li> <li>Event #</li> <li>Event Date</li> <li>Status</li> <li>Party Name</li> <li>Client/Orgai</li> <li>City</li> <li>St/Prov</li> <li>Category</li> <li>Theme</li> <li>Sales Rep</li> <li>Formatted Text</li> <li>Notes</li> <li>Allergy</li> <li>Sub-Event Fields</li> <li>Description</li> <li>Date</li> <li>Setup Style</li> <li>Room</li> <li>Auto Complete Key Numbers</li> <li>Find Records</li> <li>Close</li> </ul>	Search By Fields	Search Rules
	<ul> <li>Event Fields</li> <li>Event #</li> <li>Event Date</li> <li>Status</li> <li>Party Name</li> <li>Client/Orgai</li> <li>City</li> <li>St/Prov</li> <li>Category</li> <li>Theme</li> <li>Sales Rep</li> <li>Formatted Text</li> <li>Notes</li> <li>Allergy</li> <li>Sub-Event Fields</li> <li>Description</li> <li>Date</li> <li>Setup Style</li> <li>Room</li> <li>Auto Complete Key Numbers</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Starts With</li> <li>Exact Match</li> <li>Anywhere In Field</li> <li>Sounds Like</li> <li>Ignore Case</li> <li>Multiple Field Operator</li> <li>And</li> <li>Or</li> <li>Search Prefixes</li> <li>Include Prefixes</li> <li>The</li> <li>Close</li> </ul>

Click here to find your records

Establish your search criteria

## Using the "Go To" Tool

#### Can I search for an event by its event date?

Caterease has a special tool for searching for records based on date. It's called the "Go To" tool, and you will find it in the toolbar at top right-hand side of your Event Manager screen.

#### Finding an Event by Date

- 1. Open Event Manager.
- 2. Click the Go To button at the top right-hand side of your screen.
- 3. Choose to go to the first event taking place today, this month, next month, last month, or next fiscal quarter, or use the special calendar tool to the right of the **Go To** button to go to the first event on any date.

**Tip:** When you use the **Go To** tool, Caterease automatically re-sorts your events by Event Date. Thus, if the first record on a given day is not the one you want, simply use the navigation buttons at the top of your Caterease screen to scroll to the desired record.

	Click "Go To	o" at top of the scree	n o	or	pick a dat	e and go	to firs	t event or	ı that day
🙆 Event Manager: A	coustics Associates # E00257				,	/			- = x
		📃 🛄 Layouts 🕶	🕴 🛅 G	o To 🕶	6/19/2013	🕴 😽 Set	tings <del>•</del>	<b>1</b>	-
-Client/Organization	Information		_	Today	y - 6/19/2013	-			
Client/Organizati	on Acoustics Associates		۹.	This	A				\$788.75 🔍
Address	1661 Estero Blvd			i nis i	vionth - 0/1/2013				\$0.00
	Ft. Myers, FL 33931			Next	Month - 7/1/2013				\$78.88
Telephone	(612) 544-8901			Last N	Month - 5/1/2013				\$867.63
Fax	(612) 544-2928				-,-,				\$23.05
🖽 Event 🔂 Sub	-Event			Next	Quarter - 7/1/2013				💣 Allergy
General Miscellar	ieous								
Party Name	Company Lunch		Event #	ŧ ļ	E00257				
Sales Rep	John Smith		Date		6/19/2013		•	Wednesd	lay
Theme	Banquet	•	Status		Definite				-
Category	Social	•	Planne	d	25	Booked	4/16/2	013	
Booking Contact	Grover Rochelle	•	Actual		25	Revised	6/19/2	) 13 (10:39 a	m)
Site Contact	Grover, Rochelle	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	Guarai	nteed	22				·
🧪 Notes									
Each table will	have a flower arrangement.								E
		3 🖕 i 🕸 🌮 🔃 i f		: 🖻	💞 👿 🧭 %	2	ib 👩	6	😺 🖉 📮

## Unit 3: Booking a New Event in Event Manager

Topics covered in this unit include:

Selecting a Customer Entering General Event Information Adding Contact People Creating a Sub-Event Entering Off-Premise Site Location Details Adding Menu Items Generating a Print E-mailing a Print

## Booking a New Event for an Existing Customer from Event Manager

#### How does an existing customer differ from a new one?

If you wish to add a new event for a new customer, that means you have never done any business with that customer before; that company's information has not yet been entered into Caterease. If, however, your new event is for an existing customer, that company's information is already in the program; you need only retrieve it. Once the details of a particular client have been entered into Caterease, you never have to type them a second time. *Note: This topic discusses adding a new event manually from within Event Manager. As an option, see the chapter on using the Event Wizard.* 

#### Adding a New Event

- 1. Access the Event Manager by clicking Event Manager from the Main Caterease sidebar.
- 2. Click the **Add Record** button , located at the top of your Caterease screen. *Result:* A confirmation prompt appears.
- 3. Click **Yes** to confirm your choice.

#### **Selecting an Existing Account**

- 1. Scroll to find the existing client you wish to work with or begin typing the Client/Organization name into the Search For field.
- 2. Optionally select a contact person.
- 3. Click OK.

0		ieleo	t Accei	int						/	-	3
			$\overline{}$							1 😼	Settings 🕶	C
:	Sea	rch	For Sur				63	et 🔽	<b>ii</b> #			
*	С	lient	/Organ	ization			City		St/Prov	Telep	hone	ŀ
	Θ	M	SUS/PA	LS			Ft. Mye	ers	FL	(507)	389-5784	
	Θ	) N	ACM				Ft. Mye	ers	FL	(612)	341-9621	
	Ð	) Na	ples Cit	ty Police	Depa	rtment	Naples		FL	(239)	777-1234	
	Θ	) Na	ples De	ental Asso	oc.		Naples		FL	(239)	888-4321	
	Ð	) Na	tasha V	Vhite			Naples		FL	(239)	896-1295	
	Θ	) No	orth Nap	ples Dart	Leagu	ue	Naples		FL	(612)	827-5588	
	Đ	0	portun	ity Works	shop		Ft. Mye	ers	FL	(612)	930-4278	
	Θ	) P :	S S				Naples		FL	(612)	559-3333	
	Θ	Po	laris Inc	dustries			Naples		FL	(612)	829-8214	
	Θ	Pr	ofessior	nal Develo	opme	ent Institu	Ft. Mye	ers	FL	(612)	774-5590	
	Đ	Ro	bert Ha	milton C	ompa	any	Ft. Mye	ers	FL	(612)	544-1234	
	Θ	Ro	driguez	, Alexand	der		Naples		FL	(239)	482-3942 ex	t
	Ð	) Sa	lassa/La	au Weddi	ing Re	eception	Ft. Mye	ers	FL	(941)	555-2938	_
	Θ	) Sc	had Ass	ociates			Naples		FL	(612)	944-2153	
	Ð	) So	ftball T	ourname	nt		Ft. Mye	ers	FL	(507)	387-6031	
	Θ	) So	lid Rock	c Church	- Wo	mens Ret	Naples		FL	(612)	427-1296	
	Θ	Ste	ephen N	AcKenney	y - Ka	thryn Lev	Londo	nderry	NH	(603)	437-0555	1
	E	) Su	nset Te	chnologi	ies		Naples		FL	(239)	261-6617	
		*	Last		F	irst		Title		Telep	hone	
		>	Bland	_	C	Craig		General M	anager	(239)	261-6617	
			Bland		Ji	ared		Owner	-	(239)	261-6617	
	Θ		A Cup				Ft. Mye	ers	FL	(612)	658-5599	٦,
			-	₩ * *	ŧ	•					1	

Optionally select a contact person

## **Searching For Accounts**

#### What is the Account Finder?

The Account Finder is a powerful Caterease search tool. You can search for accounts by various criteria, search in a backward or forward direction from your current position, and even display a list of all records that matched your search.

#### **Finding an Event**

- 1. To use the Search Tool, click the **Search Records** button 6. located at the top of the Select Account window.
- 2. In the Search By Fields area, type the text you would like to search for. *Note*: You may search by more than one field.
- 3. In the Search Rules field, select the appropriate rule.
- 4. [Optional] Click the radio button next to And or Or, within the Multiple Field Operator section, if you are searching by multiple search criteria.
- 5. **[Optional]** Click the Include Prefixes checkbox and then type the prefix (a, an, the) into the **Search** Prefixes section to include prefixes in your search.
- 6. Click the **Find Records** button. *Note:* If the first match is not the record you are seeking, you can click **Find Records** again.
- 7. Once your record is located, click **Close**.



#### Don't forget to choose the correct field or fields to search by

## **Entering Event Information**

#### What is meant by "event information"?

In the middle of your Event Manager form, you will notice two tabs: **General** and **Miscellaneous**. Each of these tabs has various fields, and that is the information discussed here. You can rearrange the fields on either of these tabs, and you can also determine which fields appear or do not appear on those tabs.

*Note:* This topic discusses adding a new event manually from within Event Manager. As an option, see the chapter on using the Event Wizard.

#### **Entering Information**

- 1. Click into the first field on the **General** tab.
- 2. Edit each field using the following guidelines, pressing the **[Enter]** or **[Tab]** key to move from one field to the next:
  - For fields such as <u>Party Name</u> or guest number fields, simply click in the field and type.
  - For fields with associated drop-down lists (<u>Sales Rep</u>, <u>Theme</u>, <u>Category</u>, etc.), click the down arrow at the right of each field to view the list, then just click a selection from the list.
  - For date fields, type a date into the field or click the down arrow at the right of the field to access the drop-down calendar.
  - For financial fields (such as <u>Cancellation Charge</u>), simply type a dollar amount into the field or click the down arrow at the right of the field to access the calculator tool. *Note: Cancellation Charge is not displayed by default, but may be added via the Customization tools, explained later in this guide.*
  - To retrieve a contact person *you have already entered into Caterease*, click the down arrow at the

right of Booking or Site Contact, then click the **Select Contact From File** button , located at the upper right-hand corner of that screen. If you are adding a new contact, press the **Add Contact to** 

**File** button **b** after you have entered the new contact information.

-	-Client/Organization	Information		— -Financia	ls		
	Client/Organizati Address Telephone Fax	on Sunset Technologies 1600 Third Street Naples, FL 34102 (239) 261-6617 (239) 261-0067		Subto Serv ( Tax Total Cost	otal Chg Per Guest		\$1,400 \$224 \$98 \$1,722 \$15
	🖽 Event 🖶 🔂 Sub	-Event		····· •			<u> </u>
	General Miscellar	ieous					
	Party Name Sales Rep Theme	Company Luncheon Kathy Wilson Birthday Party		Event #	E00457 7/2/2013 ~ Definite		Tuesday
	Category	Social	•	Planned	100	Booked 4/9/20	13
	Booking Contact	Bland, Craig	•	Actual Guaranteed	90	Revised 8/27/2	013 (03:41 pm)
	notes 🤌					1	
	Craig is the mai	n point of contact.					

Client Information defaults from Account Manager Use drop-downs (quick-pick lists) for General Information

## Filling in Event Information: Adding Contacts

#### I thought I already chose the contact person?

It's very important to remember one thing as you use Caterease: You should never have to type the same thing more than once. You have already learned how to choose a contact person for an account. So, in this case, as you book an event for this account, you can simply retrieve that contact information rather than type it all again. *Note: This topic discusses adding a new event manually from within Event Manager. As an option, see the chapter on using the Event Wizard.* 

#### Adding a Contact to an Event

- 1. Click the down arrow next to the <u>Booking Contact</u> or <u>Site Contact</u> field to open that screen for editing.
- 2. If you have already entered a contact person for this account, you don't have to re-type that information.

(Click the **Select Contact From File** button to retrieve the contact person you already entered.)

- 3. Select the Booking contact person you want for the event.
- 4. If you want this person to also be the site contact for the event, click the checkbox next to **Site & Booking Contacts**.
- 5. Click **OK** to insert the contact person.
- 6. Repeat the process for the Site Contact.
- 7. If the contact person does not appear for this account, fill in Booking Contact information (Name,

Salutation, etc.), and click the Add Contact to File button to add to your default contacts.

				E 📃 Layo	uts 🕶	: 66	Go To - 6/19/2013	👻 🕴 😹 Settings 🕶		
-Client/Organization	n Informatio	n					Financials		001 7 4 4 1	_
Client/Organizati Address Telephone Fax	on Sunsi 1600 Naple (239) (239)	et Technologies Third Street es, FL 34102 261-6617 261-0067				•	Select Contact	Title General I	× → Manager	0 4 8 2 5
🛗 Event 🔂 🔂 Sub	-Event						Bland, Jared	Owner		C
General Miscellar	eous						Ī			
Party Name	Company L	uncheon				Ever	. /			
Sales Rep	Kathy Wilso	n			•	Date	. /			
Theme	Birthday Pa	rty			+	Stat				
Category	Social				-	Plan				
Booking Contact	Bland, Craig	9			•	Actu				
Site Contact	Bland, Jared	ł			+	Gua	🔲 Site & Booking Co	ontacts <u>O</u> K	<u>C</u> ancel	]
Notes	First	Jared	Salutation	Mr. Bland	j		2			_
Craia is the mai	Last	Bland	Title	Owner	/-	-	b /			
	Telephone	(239) 261-6617 e	t 100		/	/	/			
	Fax	(239) 261-0067	/	· /	/		/			
	Cellular	() -				/				
	Email	Jared@Sunset.Co	m							
			/			/				
	/	: 24 🖶		🐠 👷 👔	[   <sub>65</sub>			% 🕅 📑 🏤 🖥	a   🙉 📾 📑	5

## **Event Date**

#### What's so special about entering a date?

Caterease gives you many useful tools to assist you with data entry. In date fields such as <u>Date</u>, you can take advantage of the program's drop-down calendar to pick the exact date for your event. You can also use the advanced "Smart Date Editing" feature to have Caterease interpret dates for you.

*Note:* This topic discusses adding a new event manually from within Event Manager. As an option, see the chapter on using the Event Wizard.

#### **Entering a Date**

- 1. Click the down arrow to the right of the <u>Date</u> field.
- 2. Select a month by using the navigation arrows or holding your left mouse button down on the name of the calendar month and dragging either down or up.
- 3. Click a date to select it.

#### Using Smart Date Editing (available in the Professional version only)

With Smart Date Editing, you can enter such things as the following into any date field:

- "today" returns the current date
- "Wednesday" returns the date of the next coming Wednesday (or any other weekday)
- "eom" returns the date at the end of the current month
- "eom+1" returns the first date of the next month

💿 Ev	ent Manager: S	unset Technologies #	E00457						- = x			
				🕴 🛄 Layouts 🕶	🕴 🌃 Go To 🖲	• 6/19/2013 •	🕴 🔡 Setting	s 🕶 🛛 🖬 🕴 🖽				
-Clie	ent/Organizatior	Information										
C A T F	Client/Organizati Address Telephone Fax	on Sunset Techno 1600 Third Stre Naples, FL 341( (239) 261-6617 (239) 261-0067	logies :et D2	<u>.</u>	Subto Serv C Tax Total Cost I	ital Ihg Per Guest		5.	1,400.00 \$224.00 \$98.00 1,722.00 \$15.72			
Ge	neral Miscellan	neous							Closed			
Pa	arty Name	Company Luncheon			Event #	E00457						
Si	ales Rep	Kathy Wilson		•	Date	7/2/2013		Tuesda	y			
TT 🗐	heme	Birthday Party		•	Status		2013 ►		-			
c	ategory	Social		<b>.</b>		SMTWT	FS	2/2012	$\equiv 1$			
B	ooking Contact ite Contact	Bland, Craig Bland, Jared			Planned Actual Guaranteed	30 1 2 3 4 7 8 9 10 11 14 15 16 17 18 21 22 23 24 25 28 29 30 31 1	5 6 1 4/9 12 13 1 8/2 19 20 26 27 2 3	9/2013 27/2013 (03:41 p				
<b>~</b> 1	Notes					4 5 6 7 8	9 10					
Cro	notes aig is the mai	n point of contac	t.	: ax 40 m : 6		Today C	lear					

## **Event Manager Miscellaneous Tab**

#### What kind of information do I store on the Miscellaneous tab?

The **Miscellaneous** tab of the Event Manager offers fields to store other important event data, such as payment method, cancellation charge, and even user-defined fields (fields that you can make up and use as needed).

#### Filling out the Miscellaneous Tab

- 1. Click the **Miscellaneous** tab in Event Manager.
- 2. Enter a <u>Business Type</u>, <u>Operation</u>, <u>Reference</u>, and <u>Pay Method</u> by typing into the field provided or clicking the down arrow and selecting from the corresponding drop-down (quick-pick) lists. *Note: Quick-pick lists are created by you. See the section on Setup for more information.*
- 3. **[Optional]** Fill in the optional billing information, if desired. These fields might be used if someone else is paying for the event other than the person who is listed on the account.
- 4. **[Optional]** Fill in any Event-Specific Dates. Booked and Revised dates automatically default (on the **General** tab), Definite and Closed dates will default (on the **Miscellaneous** tab); print dates (Contract, Invoice, BEO) can optionally default if you choose to do so in the program's Global Settings.

Event Manager:	: Sunset Technologies # E00457					- = x				
		🕴 🧮 Layo	i 🔟 Layouts • i 🚮 Go To • 6/19/2013 • • i 🔀 Settings • 🗔 i 🛄 🗃							
-Client/Organizat	ion Information		-Financials							
Client/Organiz	ration Sunset Technologies		Sub	\$1.400.00						
Address	Address 1600 Third Street			Serv Chg						
	Naples, FL 34102		Tax			\$98.00				
Telephone	(239) 261-6617		Tota	il .	\$1,722.00					
Fax	(239) 261-0067		Cos	\$15.72						
🖽 Event 🔐 S	Event Sub-Event									
General Wiscer										
🔆 Miscellane	🔆 Miscellaneous Fields		28 Event Specific Dates		onal Billing Information	国家				
Business Type	Full Service 👻	Closed	-	Name						
Operation	Riverside Banquet Center 🔹	Definite	6/24/2013 -	Address						
Reference	Repeat Client -	Contract	6/24/2013 -	City						
Pay Method	Credit Card 🗸	BEO	-	St/Prov	P	ostal				
Þ		Invoice	-							
🖉 Notes										
Craig is the m	ain point of contact.									
	i 🚧 👼 🎤 🖬 🖕 i 🕈	¥ 🌮   🌔		9 ؇ 🛛	8 % 🔀 🖼 🔥	10 0 0 1 1				

Click the Miscellaneous tab for more data-entry tools

## Adding a Sub-Event

#### How many sub-events can an order have?

You can make as many sub-events as you want for each event. Perhaps an event is set to take place over several days, and each day might be a separate sub-event. Perhaps you want to make some menu adjustments, without losing your current menu choices. You can do this by treating sub-events as proposals, opting to use only the one your customer chooses. Every event must have at least one sub-event, since this is the place where you enter such data as event times and location.

*Note:* This topic discusses adding a new event manually from within Event Manager. As an option, see the chapter on using the Event Wizard.

#### How to Add a Sub-Event

- 1. Click the Sub-Event button, located next to the Event button on the left-hand side of the screen.
- 2. Click the Add A New Sub-Event button , located on the sub-event panel, which is the icon just below and to the right of the Sub-Event tab.
- 3. Note: The following pages describe entering data in the New Sub-Event window, shown below. You can optionally hold your [Shift] key down as you click the Add A New Sub-Event button to prevent the New Sub-Event Details window from appearing, then edit fields in the blue sub-event grid on the left-hand side of your Event Manager screen.
- 4. Click the down arrow to the right of the <u>Description</u> field and select a description for the sub-event.
- 5. Fill out the remaining general information using the following guidelines:
  - For fields with associated quick-pick lists (<u>Description</u>, <u>Type</u>), click the down arrow (at the right of each field) to view the list, then just click a selection from the list. (If no quick-pick list exists, see the section on Setting up Quick-pick lists.)
  - For guest fields (<u>Planned</u>, <u>Actual</u>, etc.), simply click into the field and type.
- 6. If you do not wish to include this sub-event on the contract for this event (for example, if it was created as an optional proposal) remove the check mark from the **Included** checkbox at the bottom left of the sub-event window.

Г	fui oui Generai Injorn		
Event Manager: Sunset Techn	nologies # E00471		- = X
		🕴 🛄 Layouts 🔹 🎚 🌃 Go To 👻 6/24/2013 🔹 🕴 😹 Settings 🔹	· 🖬 : मुल्ले 🚚 🖕
-Client/Organization Information	n		1
Client/Organization 9 3 Address 1	) Sub-Event: Lunch Buffet	\$2,160.00 \$341.60 \$108.00	
Telephone ( Fax (	General Venue Delivery Site	\$2,609.60 \$25.34	
🖽 Event 🔂 Sub-Event	Sub-Event Information	Times	💉 Allergy
Description Lunch Buffet Date 7/2/2013 (Tu Start End Setup Style Banquet Room Sand-Sun	Date     7/2/2013       Description     Lunch Buffet       Type     On-Premise       Planned     100       Guaranteed     90	Start \$ Serving \$	Total     □       1,095.00     ♥       1155.00     ♥       25.00     ₹
V	Included	<u>QK</u> <u>C</u> ancel	<b>第</b> 一 祖
₩ 4 1 of 1 → ₩	Food/Service Staffin	g <u>Comments</u>	

## Time Wizard

#### What is a Time Wizard?

The Time Wizard is a shortcut way to enter times for a sub-event using your mouse rather than the number keys on your keyboard.

#### Using the Time Wizard

- 1. At the top right of the Sub-Event details form, click the **Time Wizard** button
- 2. Click one of the time setting arrows, hold your left mouse button down, and drag to the left or right.
- 3. Release the mouse button when a time is set as you want it.
- 4. Remove a time by clicking the time-setting arrow with your right mouse button.
- 5. Click **OK** when finished.
- 6. To remove one of the times from the Sub-Event details screen, click on it with your right mouse button, or simply highlight the text on the **Sub-Event** tab of Event Manager and press your **[Delete]** key.



Right-click to remove time



## Selecting a New Room

#### What is meant by "on premise" versus "off premise"?

You would consider an event "on-premise" if it were being held on your property, such as in a banquet room. An event is "off-premise" if you are delivering food and supplies to another location. Entering room information for on-premise events allows Caterease to both block that room space and check for any conflicts. Entering site location information is helpful for those events that are off-premise. Both sets of information can be entered in the Sub-event form.

#### **Adding Banquet Rooms**

- 1. In the Event Manager, click the **Sub-Event** button, next to the **Event** button on the left-hand side. Select a subevent from the Sub-Event list on the left-hand column of the screen.
- 2. Click the View/Edit Current Sub-Event button [1], located just to the right, in the list of icons.
- 3. Click the **Venue** tab.
- 4. Click the arrow to the right of the <u>Setup Style</u> field and select a setup style from the corresponding quick-pick list.
- 5. Click the down arrow located at the right of the <u>Room</u> field and select a room from the corresponding quickpick list.

*Note:* The number next to each room name indicates the maximum capacity of guests in that room for the selected setup style. "NA" indicates that the selected setup style is not recognized for that room.

- 6. [**Optional**] Click in the <u>Room Category</u> field and select a room category from the corresponding drop-down list.
- 7. [**Optional**] Click in the <u>Setup Person</u> field and select the person responsible for the setup, from the drop-down list.
- 8. [Optional] Click in the Room Charge field and enter an optional room charge, or simply accept the default.
- 9. Press your **[Enter]** key.
- 10. Enter the amount of time needed to set up the room. Press [Enter] again.
- 11. Enter the amount of time needed to <u>Setup</u> and <u>Tear Down</u> the room, if needed. *Note: These fields can be set up to default to a certain amount of time.*
- 12. Click in the <u>Setup Notes</u> text box and type any necessary setup notes, or retrieve existing notes from your Scratch Pad (discussed later). You can format this text by clicking your right mouse button and selecting **Font**.

Sub-Event: Lunch Buffet X												
🕴 🏥 Layouts 🔹 🕴 Settings 🔹 🖓												
General Venue Delivery Site												
Venue Information						Miscellaneous						
Setup Style	Setup Style Banquet - Room Sand-Sun -						250.00	-				
Room							01:00	÷				
Room Category	Ballrooms Ocean	210	+		Tear [	own	00:30	¢				
Setup Person	Sand Sun	70 70	•									
📐 Setup Notes	Sea	75										
American Flag	American Flag Sunsea 140 Meeting NA Sunset Rooms					n front of room.						
	Terrace Boyal Balm	70										
	Sea Oats	180										
Included							<u>O</u> K	<u>C</u> ance	el			

## **Room Selection Wizard**

#### Can't the program just pick a room for me?

Well, that would be magic, wouldn't it? Try the Room Selection Wizard (*available in the Professional version only*). This powerful tool will consider the date, time, setup style, and guest count of the party you are booking, and will automatically choose the best matching room for the designated criteria. It will even show all other rooms and whether or not they are available.

#### Accessing the Room Selection Wizard

- 1. In Event Manager, retrieve or add an event.
- 2. Click the **Sub-Event** button, located next to the **Event** button.
- 3. Add or retrieve a sub-event.
- 4. Fill out date, guest count, and time information.
- 5. Click the **Venue** tab.
- 6. Click the **Room Selection Wizard** (ellipse) button next to the <u>Room</u> drop-down. The best matching room for your sub-event will be highlighted in green.

#### Using the Room Selection Wizard

Below are some suggestions for using the Room Selection Wizard:

- Click **OK** to accept the selected room, or simply double-click the room name.
- Select another room, setup style, or both, if desired, and click OK.
- Click the **View Conflicts** button to view the reasons certain rooms are unavailable (highlighted in red).
- Click the View menu to optionally display room notes and picture or associated breakout rooms and setup styles.
- Click the **Settings** button for other options for the Wizard, such as allowing the selection of unavailable rooms, automatically showing the recommended room, or showing grid lines.
- Click Settings > Conflict Settings to optionally have the Wizard track booking conflicts or capacity conflicts.
- Click the **Refresh** button to refresh the Wizard screen after optional settings have been changed.
- Click the Quick Column Customizing button in order to add or remove other columns of information to the Wizard display, including room charge, default diagram, location, etc.



## **Copying Setup Notes from the Scratch Pad**

#### What are Setup Notes?

The *Setup Notes* in Event Manager is a place for you to enter the special setup requests of your customers. These notes will print on your Contract and BEO, but can be suppressed, if desired.

#### **Copying from Scratch Pad**

- 1. Click into the Setup Notes area, located on the Venue tab.
- 2. Click the **Scratch Pad** button *S*, located at the top of the Sub-Event window.
- 3. Highlight the text you want to copy and press the **Insert Text** button.
- 4. Format the text by highlighting it, clicking your right mouse button, and selecting Font.

_			
Event Manager: Sunset	Technologies # E00471		- = x
		Layouts • 🕴 🌇 Go To • 6/24/2013 • 🕴 😹 Settings	• <u> </u>
-Client/Organization Info	rmation		
Client/Organization Address Telephone Fax Description Lunch Buf Date 7/2/2013 ( Start 12:00 PM End 04:00 PM Setup Style Banquet Room Sand-Sun	Sub-Event: Lunch Buffet   Layouts •     General     Venue   Delivery   Setup   Setup   Banquet   Room   Sand-Sun   Room   Sand-Sun   Room   Sand-Sun   Setup   Ballroom   Setup   Setup   Notes   American Flag and podium with notes	Scratch Pad ×	5250.00 \$40.00 \$12.50 \$302.50 \$0.00 Total
,	🔽 Included	<u>O</u> K <u>C</u> ancel	
H4 ← 1 of 1 → H4	Food/Service Staffin	g <u>Comments</u> F 🌮 🔍 : 🔝 🔜 : 🎅 💞 🗷 🕂 😡	

Click the **Insert Text** button to insert the highlighted text

## Working with Site Location and Directions

#### Where do I enter site location information?

If a function is held off-premise, that site location information is added at the sub-event level.

#### **Adding a Site Location**

- 1. In Event Manager, click the **Sub-Event** button, located next to the **Event** button on the left-hand side of the screen.
- 2. Select a sub-event from the sub-event list on the left-hand column of the screen.
- 3. Click the **View/Edit Current Sub-Event** button [19], located just to the right.
- 4. Click the **Site** tab at the top of the Sub-Event detail form.
- 5. Click into the <u>Name</u> field.
- 6. Type the name and address of the site and then click the **Save Site Location** button is or click the **Select Site Location** button is to retrieve an existing site location.

*Note:* You may also click the **Tools** button and select **Site Location** > **Copy From Client** to copy the site location from the Client address.

- 7. [Optional] Click into the <u>Category</u> field and type a category or select an option from the drop-down list.
- 8. [Optional] Enter the website address into the Website field.
- 9. Type in the <u>Directions</u> text box as desired. Format this text by clicking your right mouse button and selecting **Font**.
- 10. When finished, click the **OK** button to add the site location and directions to the Site Locations Database.

0	Event Manager: Sunset	: Technologies #	E00471						-	= x
i 🧰 Layouts 🔹 i 📆 Go To 🔹 6/25/2013 🔹 i 🚟 Settings									IS 🕶 🛛 🖬 🗮	i # .
	-Client/Organization Info									
	Client/Organization	🙆 Sub-Event	Select Site Location				х	X	\$2,16	50.00 🔍
	Address	E Layouts	Search For		🕴 😸 Set	tings 🕶 🖣		😸 Settings 🕶 🛛 🗔	\$34	1.60
	Telephone		* Name	Search For	City	St/Prov	-		\$2,60	9.60
	Fax	General Ve	Cambier Park		Naples	FL	<u>+ +</u>		\$2	25.34
		Site Loca	F.G.C.U. Library		Ft. Myers	FL			.202	
	🖽 Event 🔂 🔂 Sub-Ever	Site Loca	Holiday Inn Downtown	n	Naples	FL			*	Allergy
		Name	Museum		Naples	FL				
	Description Lunch Buf	Address							Total	- ₽2
	Date 7/2/2013 ( Start 12:00 PM	City							1,095.00 PT	e*
	End 04:00 PM								595.00 H	=
	Setup Style Banquet	Category							25.00	39
	Room Sand-Sun	Telephon								高山
		🖨 Directio								<b>₽</b>
Þ										
			Use Client Site Location	n .	OK	Connel				
			B ose eneme site coentre							
										ER.
							<b></b>			_
		V Included					<u>0</u> K	Cancel		謂
			Fand/Canting Staffir	Commont	-				-	
	₩ 4 1 of 1 → >>>		rood/service statil	ig <u>comment</u>	2					
			👾 📅 🖧 🖬 🖕 🕅	¥ 🌮 🖹		🤊 💞 🔽	8	% 🔀 🔤 🍰	1 🖗 🖉 🔓	😻 🖕

## **Selecting Food/Service Menus**

#### Where do I add menu items?

Menu items are added to a function at the sub-event level, on the Food/Service tab.

#### **Retrieving Food/Service Items**

- 1. Click the **Display Menus** button , located to the right of <u>Item Name</u> on the Sub-Event display, and the Select Menu Items window will open.
- 2. Drop items from your menus into the sub-event using the following guidelines:
  - double-click a single item in the menu window to insert that item and leave the Menu window open
  - hold your left mouse button down and drag over several items to select more than one item at a time
  - hold down the **[Ctrl]** key on your keyboard and click several items to select non-contiguous items
  - click **OK** to insert the currently selected items and close the menu window
  - click and hold your mouse button down on an item or the last item in a group to drag those items from your menu onto your Food/Service tab
  - click Select Items to insert the currently selected items and leave the menu window open
- 3. Rearrange items on your Food/Service tab in any order you want by dragging and dropping them.
- 4. Add or modify descriptions by clicking the **Descriptions** button . *Note: Descriptions can also be included in prints.*



Retrieve the desired items

## **Generating a Print**

#### **Printing a Print**

- 1. While in Event Manager, click the **Home** ribbon tab, and click the bottom half of the **Prints** button. *Note: The Prints button is a split button. (Click the top half to select prints from a floating window.)*
- 2. Select General, Event Contracts/Invoices or Event Subprints.
- 3. Click the desired print.
- 4. On the Print Preview screen that opens, click the **Print** button.



Selecting Multiple Prints allows you to print more than one print at a time

## E-mailing a Print (See image on next page)

#### Can I e-mail a print directly from Caterease?

More easily than you can even dream possible! Plus, if you own the Marketing Tools add-in to the program, you can use one of your custom merge letters as the body of the outgoing e-mail!

#### **Emailing a Print**

- 1. Click the **Email** button is at the top of the Print Preview screen. *Note:* Notice that the print is automatically attached as a .PDF at the bottom of the e-mail window. You can change the format of this attachment by clicking it with your right mouse button and selecting **Change Type To** and choosing a different type.
- Type the recipient's e-mail address in the <u>To</u> field, or click the word **To** or the **Address Book** button at the top of the window to access the Caterease address book.
   *Note:* The Caterease address book automatically lists all contact people for the current customers who have corresponding e-mail addresses on file, as well as staff scheduled to work the event and a custom personal list of addresses.
- 3. **[Optional]** Enter additional e-mail addresses in the <u>Cc</u> and <u>Bcc</u> fields, separating each address by semicolons.
- 4. Type a subject for the e-mail in the <u>Subject</u> field, or click the down arrow at the right of the field to access the customizable quick-pick list.
- 5. Click in the large white text block of the e-mail window and type the body of your e-mail, or optionally insert a custom merge letter (see below).
- 6. **[Optional]** Format the body of the e-mail by using the formatting tools at the top of the screen. Alternatively, highlight any text within the body of the e-mail, click your right mouse button, and choose **Font**.
- 7. When finished, click **Send** at the top left-hand side of the window to send the e-mail.

**Tip:** E-mail from Caterease is automatically sent via your regular e-mail Outbox. Therefore, all return correspondence will be sent to your normal work e-mail address.

#### Using a Merge Letter as the Body of an E-mail (See image on next page)

- 1. Click the **Use Merge Document** button , located at the top of the e-mail window. *Note: You must own the Marketing Tools add-in to the program to use this feature.*
- 2. Select a merge letter to use as the body of the e-mail.
- 3. Click **OK**.

**Result:** The letter that you've chosen becomes the body of your current e-mail, and all merge fields merge in appropriate information from this event.

*Note:* As an alternative, you can double-click the title of the letter to insert it.



## **Unit 4: Event Scheduler**

Topics covered in this unit include:

Opening the Scheduler Changing Scheduler Views Grouping the Scheduler Adding Notes to the Scheduler Retrieving Events from the Scheduler
## **The Event Scheduler Screen**

Month View						C	urrent day is	highlighte	ed
🚳 Scheduler									- = x
						: 66	GoTo 🔹 者	Tools -	😼 Settings 🔹 🗔
Day W	eek Month	Year Op	tions •						
Sunday	Monday	Tuesday	Wednesday	Thursday	Friday		Saturday	▲ ◀	June, 2013 🕨
(1) May, 26	27	28	29 (	1) 30		31	June, 1	S M 22 26 2 23 2 3 24 9 10 25 16 17	W T F S 28 29 30 31 1 3 4 5 6 7 8 0 11 2 13 14 15 7 18 19 20 21 22
(2) 2 Naples De Wiggins, G	(1) 3	(2) 4	5 (	2) 6 () () Greg's Soc () () Robert Ha	(1)	7 (1) I Rock	8 American I	<sup>26</sup> <b>23</b> 24 27 30	<b>4 25</b> 26 <b>27 28 29</b> 2 3 4 5 6 de In View
(2) 9	10	(1) 11	12 (	1) 13	(1)	14 (1)	15	Ho	lidays
🕚 🎱 Diebold Co		🕑 🎧 Polaris Ind		🕒 🍑 Ducks Unli	🕒 🕑 Goe	tz/Lyons We	dding Receptic		tes
(2) 16 Naples De Gustave A	(1) 17	(1) 18	(3) 19 (	2) 20 Sunset Te Crow Wed		21	22		
(2) 23 Naples De Wiggins, G	24	(1) 25	26 (	1) 27	(2) au Wedding Re	28 (3) ceptio 🕘 rak Re	29 Aid Associ		
30	(1) July, 1	(3) 2 ccer Team	(1) 3 (	1) 4		5	6	<b>_</b>	
* Event #	Client/Organization		Sales Ren	Status	Subtotal	Tin	Serv Cha	Tax	Total
+ E00379	Gustave A. Larson (	Company	Roxanne M. Mc Nam	e Closed	1.950.75	0.0	0 306.52	136.5	5 2.393.82
± E00323	PSS		Kathy Wilson	Definite	2,213.00	0.0	0 322.08	154.9	1 2,689.99
€ E00257	Acoustics Associat	es .	John Smith	Definite	245.00	0.0	0.00	24.5	0 269.50
Cnt: 3					4,408.75	0.00	628.60	315.96	5,353.31
Use the Quick C	olumn Customizi	ng button to cus	stomize the grid	7	The grid sho	ows the cu	rrent day's e	events	

Event Scheduler Introduction

The Event Scheduler is a graphic calendar tool designed to give you an instant indication of the goings-on at your facility. The Scheduler can be optionally displayed in a year-at-a-glance view, month-at-a-glance view, a week-at-a-glance view, a day-at-a-glance view, or a custom work-week-at-a-glance view.

The bars on the Scheduler screen can be color-coded based on an event's Status, Event Category, Sales Representative, or Business Type. In addition, you can have additional data (guest count, theme, financial information, etc.), display in the bars on the Event Scheduler screen when in Day view or Work Week view.

As with any grid in Caterease, the grid at the bottom of the Scheduler can be customized to suit your needs. Details of any highlighted day or days will be displayed in this grid. Using your left mouse button, drag your mouse pointer over several days to highlight them and show their details in the grid. Grid columns can be customized, data can be sorted or grouped, and custom grids can be exported or printed as custom reports.

## **Changing Scheduler Views**

## What types of views does the Scheduler offer?

You can choose to look at events in your Scheduler in Month view, Week view, Day view, or even a Year view. In addition, you can choose whether you are looking at only event details, sub-event details, and whether Staffing or Reminders are shown on the display.

## Using the Month View

- 1. Click the **Month** button dat the top of the Scheduler, if it is not already selected.
- 2. Change months by clicking the right or left arrows on the top of the Date Navigator (the small monthly calendar located to the right of the Scheduler screen). Note: As an alternative, click a specific date in the Navigator, and then click the Month button to view that entire month. For example, click October 20 in the Navigator and then click the Month button to view the entire month of October.

## Using the Day View

- 1. Click the **Day** button **Day** at the top of the Scheduler screen. *Note:* Optionally display event details by right-clicking any bar on the Scheduler screen (with an event) and selecting **Set Display Fields.**
- 2. Change days by clicking on any date in the Date Navigator.
- 3. Optionally display multiple dates simultaneously by holding your **[Ctrl]** key down as you click multiple dates.

## Using the Week View

 Click the Week button Week at the top of the Scheduler screen. Note: To customize your week, click Show As > Work Week (or) Full Week > Options. Note: No matter which day you click on in the Date Navigator, the Scheduler will automatically display the corresponding day when it is set in Work Week view. Also, see note on Set Display Fields, above.



## Right-click to add event details to the display

## Grouping the Calendar

#### Can I separate groups of events into different calendars?

Believe it or not, you can! The powerful grouping option in the Scheduler lets you create separate calendars of events based on a variety of general event details.

#### **Customizing the Calendar**

- 1. If you haven't already, click the Scheduler button on the Main sidebar group to open the Scheduler tool.
- 2. Click the down arrow to the right of the Group By option at the top center of the ribbon area.
- 3. Select any detail from the list to separate your events into groups. Choose from among Status; Theme; Sales Rep; Category; Business Type; Operation, or accept None as the default.
- 4. **[Optional]** Click the **Day**, **Week**, **Work Week**, **Month**, or **Year** button to view your groups in that display.
- 5. **[Optional]** Use the plus and minus sign buttons in the navigation bar at the lower left-hand corner of the calendar to add or remove calendars, respectively, from your current view.



Use the plus and minus sign to view more or fewer themes

Click in the checkbox to show Holidays or Notes

## Adding Notes to the Scheduler

#### What if I need to make a quick note on at date on the calendar?

The Notes feature in the Caterease Scheduler lets you more or less add a "yellow sticky" on a particular date for any reason whatsoever. For example, perhaps a customer is seriously considering a date but has not booked an event with you. However, you nonetheless want to make a quick note for everyone to see. A Scheduler note is the perfect solution!

1. Confirm that the **Notes** checkbox is selected in the <u>Include In View</u> pane on the right-hand side of the Scheduler screen.

*Note:* New notes cannot be added if notes are not currently being viewed (i.e., if there is not a check in the Notes checkbox).

- 2. Click your right mouse button on any date on the calendar and select **New Note**. *Note: If you want your note to be specific to a certain group or time, you can modify your view as described above.*
- 3. Type in a <u>Caption</u> for the note, or select one from the custom drop-down list. *Note: This caption will appear on the calendar display to identify the note.*
- 4. [Optional] Edit the <u>Start</u> and <u>End</u> dates or leave the defaults.
- 5. [Optional] Enter a <u>Category</u> for the note, or select one from the custom quick-pick list.
- 6. [Optional] Edit the <u>User</u> responsible for the note's action item, or accept the default.
- 7. Enter the details of the note in the large text block, and optionally modify the text as desired by using the formatting tools located at the top of the text block.
- 8. **[Optional]** Change the background color for the note by clicking the ellipse button at the bottom of the Note window.

*Note:* If you select a new background color, that will serve as the default background color for all notes created in the future – but obviously you can change it again as desired.



Right-click on a particular date to add a new note, then select New Note

# **Unit 5: Advanced Menu Features**

Topics covered in this unit include:

Using the Insert Mode when Retrieving Menu Items Retrieving Menu Packages Adding/Modifying Menu Item Descriptions Adding Menu Items by Hand Customizing the Food/Service Tab Copying Menus from Event to Event

## Using the Insert Mode when Retrieving Menu Items

#### **Retrieving menu items**

Menu items can be retrieved into an event from your pre-existing menus or unique items can be added to an event by hand. The Insert Mode tool allows you to place an item anywhere at all on the Food/Service tab.

#### **Retrieving items**

- 1. Select a menu title on the left-hand side of the Select Menu Items window.
- 2. Select a single menu item or multiple items using the following guidelines:
  - Click an item to select it.
  - Hold your left mouse button down and drag your cursor over multiple items.
  - Click one item, hold the [Ctrl] button down on your keyboard and click other items.
- 3. Drop items from your menus onto your **Food/Service** tab using the following guidelines:
  - Double-click a single item in the Select Menu Items window.
  - Hold your mouse button down on one individual item (without moving) for a half-second and drag that item from the Select Menu Items window onto your **Food/Service** tab.
  - Hold your left mouse button down on a group of selected items and drag and drop them onto the **Food/Service** tab.
  - Click the **Select Items** button.
  - Click **OK**.
  - Click the Insert Mode button to retrieve menu items in specific positions on the Food/Service tab of your event.

**Result:** This tool causes the selected menu items to be automatically placed above the currently highlighted item on the **Food/Service** tab (rather than always at the bottom); when dragging and dropping, the Insert Mode allows placement anywhere at all on the **Food/Service** tab.

4. Click in the <u>Oty</u> column on the **Food/Service** tab and enter a quantity for each menu item.

Click the Insert Mode button to place items above other items



## **Retrieving Menu Packages into an Event**

#### What is a menu package?

Menu packages (*available in the Standard and Professional versions*) allow you to select multiple menu items from multiple menus at one time. For example, let's say you have a "Lunch Buffet" menu, and it has an item called Supreme Buffet. This buffet consists of the Deli Sandwich Platter, found in your Platters menu, Iced Tea, found in your Bar menu, and Cheesecake, found in your Desserts menu. Three different items, three different menus. Yet, you can create a single item called "Supreme Buffet" and link all three of these items to it. That way, when you retrieve "Supreme Buffet" into an event, it can optionally come with all of its included dishes automatically.

#### **Selecting Menu Packages**

- 1. In Event Manager, click the Sub-Event button, located on the left-hand side of the screen.
- 2. Click the Food/Service tab at the bottom of the screen, if it is not already selected.
- 3. Click the **Display Menus** button , located on the right-hand side of the **Food/Service** tab.
- 4. Click Packages, from the left-hand side of the Select Menu Items window.
- 5. Click the **Menu Packaging** button *1. found at the top of the Select Menu Items window*.
- 6. Double-click any menu package item.

*Note:* Menu packages are indicated by a small plus sign to the left of the item name. You can click this plus sign to view "sub-items" within the package, and even optionally de-select various sub-items by holding your [Ctrl] key down and clicking them.



Click to enable Menu Package selection

All "Sub-Items" are selected automatically

## Adding and Modifying Menu Item Descriptions

#### What is a menu item description?

The Description of a menu item allows you to write flowing, wrapping text about a menu item and format the text any way you'd like. This description is retrieved into an event order with a menu item, or can be added on-the-fly.

#### **Adding a Description**

- 1. In Event Manager, select a sub-event to modify its menu.
- 2. Click the **Food/Service** tab at the bottom of the screen, if it is not already selected.
- 3. Select a menu item to edit, or click the **Add a New Food/Service Item** button on the right-hand side of the screen to add a new one.
- 4. Click the **Show/Hide Item Details** button **a**. A white text box appears at the bottom of the **Food/Service** tab.
- 5. Click in the description text box at the bottom of the Food/Service tab and type as desired.

#### **Modifying a Description**

- 1. Select any menu item on the **Food/Service** tab.
- 2. Click the Show/Hide Item Details button
- 3. Right-click into the text block and choose **Modify Description**.
- 4. Format the text using the Format toolbar at the top of the screen, or right-click and select **Font**. *Tip: If you want to return the description to the original, right-click, then choose Reset Description*.

💿 Event Manager: Sunset T	echnologies # E00471			- = x
		📃 🛄 Layouts 🕶 🗄 🐻 Go To 🕶 6/25/2013	🔹 🕴 😼 Settings	· 🖪 : # 🖬 📲 🖕
-Client/Organization Inform	nation	-Financials		
Client/Organization Address	Sunset Technologies 1600 Third Street Naples, FL 34102	Subtotal Serv Chg Tax		\$2,160.00 \$341.60 \$108.00
Telephone	(239) 261-6617	Total		\$2,609.60
Fax	(239) 261-0067	Cost Per Guest		\$25.34
Event Sub-Event				🗎 Closed 🛛 🗶 Allergy
Description Lunch Buffe	et 📲 🐘 Item Name	Pr	rice Qty	Total
Date 7/2/2013 (10 Start 12:00 DM	Le)	et	\$10.95 100	1,095.00
End 04:00 PM	Soft Drinks		\$1.95 100	195.00 E
Setup Style Banguet	Wood Grain Bodi		\$5.95 100	25.00
Room Sand-Sun		um	\$25.00 1	
A				
	Description     C       Recipe     in       Label     ve       Notes     C       Modifications     O	hef's Table Buffet cludes: Italian mostaccioli, baked chicken, age dressing, whipped potatoes and gravy, egetable du jour, tossed salad, potato salad, ble slaw, rolls and butter, dessert, coffee, tra milk		<b>₩</b>
₩ ◀ 1 of 1 ► ₩	Food/Service Staff	ing <u>Comments</u>		
	特 🛱 🖧 🖬 🖕   '	* 9 🔃 🔝 🔏 🛛 🖉 🗞 🕫	6 🔀 🖻 🚯	) 0 🕸 🕹 😻 💂

Click the Show/Hide Item Details icon to see the menu item description

## Adding a New Food/Service Item

#### Where do I add menu items that are not already in Menu Manager?

Menu items are added to a function at the sub-event level, on the Food/Service tab.

#### **Adding Food/Service Items**

- 1. In Event Manager, click the **Sub-Event** button, located next to the **Event** button, on the left-hand side of the screen.
- 2. Select a sub-event from the Sub-Event list on the left-hand side of the screen.
- 3. Click the Add A New Food/Service Item button , located on the right-hand side of the Food/Service tab.
- 4. Type a name for the menu item and press your [Enter] key.
- 5. Type a price for the item, or click the down arrow at the right of the Price field to access the calculator.
- 6. Press your **[Enter]** key and type the appropriate quantity for the menu item into the <u>Qty</u> field.
- 7. Press [Enter] again and fill in other fields as desired.
- 8. With your new menu item still highlighted, click the down arrow next to <u>Type</u> (right-hand side of the **Food/Service** tab) and choose an appropriate <u>Type</u> for the new item.
- 9. Rearrange items on your Food/Service tab in any order you want by dragging and dropping them.

**Tip:** As an option, you can right-click any new menu item (or modified existing item) and choose **Special Editing** > **Copy to Menu Manager** to copy this item back to your default menus (*Professional version*).

Event Manager: Sunse	t Technologies # E00	471			
er		Layouts • 6/25/2013	🔡 Se	ettings 🕶 🗔	: # = #
Client/Organization Info Client/Organization Address Telephone Fax Event Sub-Eve	vrmation Sunset Technologi 1600 Third Street Naples, FL 34102 (239) 261-6617 (239) 261-0067 nt	-Financials Subtotal Serv Chg Tax Total Cost Per Guest		Close	\$2,160.00 \$341.60 \$108.00 \$2,609.60 \$25.34 ed Aller
Description Lunch Bu	ffet 🗉	* Item Name	Price (	Qty Tota	
Date 7/2/2013	lue)	Chef's Table Buffet	\$10.95	1,09	35.00 PT
End 04:00 PM		Chocolate Cake	\$5.05 1	100 50	
Setup Style Banquet		Wood Grain Podium	\$25.00	1	25.00
Room Sand-Sun			323.00		0.00
		Description     Chocolate Cake       Recipe     Label       Notes     Modifications			
₩ 4 1 of 1 → >>>	<b>B</b>	Food/Service Staffing Comments			
	. <u>Av</u>	🖶 🎤 🖬 🚽 🖤 🌮 🔃 🔝 🔝 🗐 🐨 💞 💆 🖉	°% 🔀 🛁	1 ib 🗃 🥝	🖻 🚂 🛛 💕

Click Insert A New Food/Service Item to add a menu item in between existing items

When adding a new menu item, notice that new item defaults to the TYPE settings of the Item you were on previously. Therefore, always choose/change to the correct Type.

## **Customizing the Food/Service Tab**

#### Is there any other information I can display on the Food/Service tab?

Don't forget that the **Food/Service** tab is a grid. As such, it offers you total control over what details are displayed.

#### **Quick Column Customizing Button**

- Click the Quick Column Customizing button , located at the top left-hand side of the detail grid (to the left of the first column heading), to drop down a list of optional columns. Note: If this button does not appear, you must enable the feature in your program's preferences area (Administration > Settings > Preferences).
- 2. Click the checkbox next to any optional field name to display that field in the grid.

#### **Customizing Columns Using the Field Chooser (Optional)**

- 1. Click the **Field Chooser** button <sup>[1]</sup>, located on the lower right-hand side of the screen.
- 2. Hold your left mouse button down on a column heading in the small *Customization* window.
- 3. Drag your mouse pointer and drop the heading in line with other heading in the Food/Service tab grid.
- 4. Repeat to display other columns.
- 5. Optionally remove columns by dragging them into the small *Customization* window.
- 6. Close the *Customization* window when finished.
- 7. Click the **Save Current Window Settings** button **I** to save your new view.

#### Use Quick Column Customizing button or the Field Chooser button

1

🙆 Event Mana	ger: Sunset Te	echnologies #	E0047	1							- =	х
					📋 Layouts -	: 55	Go To 🝷 6/25/2013	- 18	Setting	js <b>•</b>   📑 📑		Ţ
-Client/Organ	ization Inform	ation				— ¥	inancials					
Client/Org Address Telephone	anization S 1 N (2	unset Techno 600 Third Stre laples, FL 341( 239) 261-6617	logies et )2			٩	Sobtotal Serv hg Tax Total			s s	2,755.00 \$436.80 \$137.75 3,329.55	٩
Fax	(4	259) 261-0067					Cost Per Guest				\$33.34	
🕮 Event 📴	Sub-Event			_				$\backslash$		📄 Closed	Aller	gy
Description Date	Lunch Buffet 7/2/2013 (Tu	e)		Item Name Time	Net Profit	1		Price \$10.95	Qty 100	Total 1,095.00	FT 5	3
Start	12:00 PM			Item Name	Total Markup			\$1.95	108	195.00	₽ 📒	
End	04:00 PM			Category	No Tip			\$5.95	100	595.00		
Setup Style	Banquet			Prep Area	No Tax			\$25.00	1	25.00	1 🕺	
Room	Sand-Sun	🕞		Cost	Delivery			\$5.95	100	595.00	۳ 🔒	
				Markup Base Price Price Markup Price Default Qty Linked	Type Hide Acct Code Item ID Comment Vendor							
				Min Qty Qty Total Total Cost	URL Bar Code				•			
				Modifications				Ŀ			<b>5</b> 5	
											+=	
			ļ	L							+=	i
₩ 4 1 of 1	▶ ₩	<b>B</b>	<u>F</u>	ood/Service St	affing <u>Comments</u>							
			<del>辨</del> :	न 🖧 🗹 🖕	i 🕸 🌮 🔍 i 🕯		🕑 💜  🗷 🥴	* % 🔀	<b>1</b>	) 🗃 🥝 🛤	<b>a</b> 💈	-

## **Copying Menus from Order to Order**

#### What if one client wants the same menu another client had?

It's a Caterease motto: You should never have to type the same thing more than once. In this case, you can copy an entire menu from one order directly into another. Here's how:

#### **Copying a Menu**

- 1. Find the order in Event Manager with the menu you want to copy.
- 2. Click the **Sub-Event** button.
- 3. Click your right mouse button anywhere on the Food/Service tab.
- 4. Select Special Editing Copy (All Items) or Copy (Selected Items).
- 5. Retrieve the order you want to paste the menu into.
- 6. Click your right mouse button anywhere on the Food/Service tab.
- 7. Select Special Editing Paste (All Copied Items).
- 8. Indicate whether you want to replace any existing items with the items you are pasting, or whether you want to simply add to them (if applicable).



Click your right mouse button on the Food/Service tab grid to see the list

## **Generating an Ingredients List**

#### Is there a way to generate an Ingredients List and a Required Item List for my chef?

Yes! You can generate a variety of prints directly from Event Manager, and you can customize the prints using the Miscellaneous Print Designer Tool (discussed in detail in Unit 21).

- 1. Access Event Manager by clicking the **Main** button on the sidebar, then clicking the **Event Manager** button.
- 2. Use the Search tools to find an existing event for which you want to print an ingredients list.
- 3. Click **Prints** at the top of the Caterease screen.
- Select Event Subprints > Ingredients > Ingredients List.
   Note: You also have the option of printing an ingredients list by type or by category.
- 5. Click the **Print** button 🖾, located at the upper left-hand side of the window.
- 6. [**Optional**] Edit the print by clicking the **Edit in Word** button in the **Edit in Excel** button **E**.
- 7. **[Optional]** Click the **Email** button **I** to e-mail a copy of the print.
- 8. **[Optional]** Click the **Export** button **b** to export the print.

🥩 🗰 💌 ) 🔻				Ing	redients List			
review Contact Histo	ory							
int Setup PDF	Export Email	Eind	W <u>h</u> ole Pag Page <u>W</u> idth Multiple Pa	e Q I	Navigation	ion Thumbnail	View     View     Window	G
PhilityExport		Tools	201		Navigation	Preview	Windows	·
	DESIG		E			Ingred	ients List	
	Client/Organizati	on		Event Date	Booking Contact	Site Contact	Event #	
	Sunset Techno	logies		7/2/2013 (Tue)	Craig Bland	Jared Bland	E00471	
	Address 1600 Third Stre	et, Naples, FL 341	102		Telephone (239) 261-6617	Theme Social	Guests 90 (Gtd)	
	Party Name		Theme		Category	Sales	Rep	
	Craig's Birthda	у	Social		Special Event	Kathy	Wilson	
	Name		Qty	Measure	Conversion		Associated With	
	Chicken breast		150	Each	(150) Each	(10)	0) Chef's Table Buffet	
	Cole slaw		200	Solid Oz	(12.5) Pounds	(10)	0) Cnej s 1aole Buffet 0) Chef's Table Buffet	
	Mostaccioli		400	Solid Oz	(25) Pounds	(10)	0) Chef's Table Buffet	
	Potato salad		200	Solid Oz	(12.5) Pounds	(10	0) Chef's Table Buffet	
	Romaine lettuc	e	25	Each	(25) Each	(10)	0) Chef's Table Buffet	
	Sage dressing		300	Solid Oz	(18.75) Pounds	(10	0) Chef's Table Buffet	
	Vegetable du L	our	300	Solid Oz	(18.75) Pounds	(10)	0) Chef's Table Buffet	
	regetable du s				(10.70) 70 1			

## **Generating a Required Item List**

- 1. Access Event Manager by clicking the **Main** button on the sidebar, then clicking the **Event Manager** button.
- 2. Use the Search tools to find an existing event for which you want to print an ingredients list.
- 3. Click **Prints** at the top of the Caterease screen.
- Select Event Subprints > Ingredients > Required Item List Note: You also have the option of printing an ingredients list by type or by category.
- 5. Click the **Print** button 🖾, located at the upper left-hand side of the window.
- 6. [Optional] Edit the print by clicking the Edit in Word button in the Edit in Excel button .
- 7. **[Optional]** Click the **Email** button **I** to e-mail a copy of the print.
- 8. **[Optional]** Click the **Export** button **b** to export the print.



# Unit 6: Shifts, Staffing, and Comments

Topics covered in this unit include:

Adding Staffing to an Event Adding Shifts to an Event Copying Special Requests/Comments from the Scratch Pad

## Adding Staffing to an Event

#### Can I add waiters, waitresses, bartenders, etc. to an event?

Absolutely, you can staff an event quickly and easily using the **Staffing** tab on the Sub-Event display of Event Manager. Caterease will even dynamically tell you which employees are available to work the event and which employees have conflicts, such as being on vacation or working another event.

#### Selecting Employees for an Event

- 1. In Event Manager, click the **Sub-Event** button located next to the **Event** button on the left-hand side of the screen.
- 2. Select the sub-event (if there is more than one) to which to add staffing.
- 3. Click the **Staffing** tab at the bottom of the screen.
- 4. Click the **Select Staff** button Relocated at the upper right-hand side of the **Staffing** tab.
- 5. Select any available employees (drag your mouse or use your [**Ctrl**] key to select more than one at a time).
- 6. Click **OK**, drag and drop the selected employees onto the screen, or simply click the **Select Staff** button.

#### Selecting Unavailable Employees

- 1. Click the **Settings** button at the top right of the **Select Staffing** form.
- 2. Click **Staff Selection**.
- 3. Click Allow Selection Of Unavailable Employees.
- 4. Click on any unavailable employee, indicated by red text.
- 5. Optionally click the **View Staffing Conflicts** button button to see why the employee is unavailable.
- 6. Retrieve the employee onto the **Staffing** tab, as described above.

		Click to	view conflicts		
			Ň	Click to retrie	eve_staff
	Click to vie	w shift rules	$\backslash$		1 35
	Chek to th		$\backslash$		/
			\		/
Event Manager: Sunset Technolog	ies # E00471	Select Staffing For Event		/	×
				: DD Sattings	
-Client/Organization Information				C	
Client/Organization Sunset Tec	hnologies	罕 Select Shifts 🛛 🔊	Select Staff		00 q
Address 1600 Third	Street	Position	Req 🔹 Employee	<ul> <li>Uniform</li> </ul>	<b>B</b> 0
Naples, FL	34102	> Waiter/Waitress	5 🔹 🕈 🛉 Alden, Ter	ry Black Tie	75
Telephone (239) 261-6	617	Bus Boy	5 🛉 Bakerton,	Carolyn Black Tie	55
Fax (239) 261-0	0067	Bartender	4 🕺 🛣 Collins, M	ichael Black Tie	84
The French De State Frank		Host/Hostess	2 🛉 Dallas, Lar	ry Black Tie	lawn.
Event Sub-Event		Driver	2 🕺 🛣 Dillinger, S	cott Black Tie	lergy
	e		🛉 Hazelby, A	my Black Tie	
Description Lunch Buffet	Position		🚽 🛉 Johnson, k	(elly 🕨 🛛 Black Tie	-1-3
Date 7/2/2013 (Tue)			🚺 🛉 Kipplinger	, Chris 🔋 Black Tie	
Start 12:00 PM			🛛 🕱 Kipplinger	, Greg 🔋 Black Tie	
End 04:00 Pivi			🛉 Masterson	, Jason 🛛 Black Tie	
Poom Sand Sun			🕴 🛉 Michelson	, Kristy 🛛 Black Tie	
Koom Sand-Sun			🖌 🛣 Myers, Eric	: Black Tie	
			🛉 Napoli, Ch	eryl Black Tie	
	•		🛉 Scheinbau	m, Leila 🛛 Black Tie	
			🛉 Schoenfel	d, George Black Tie	
			🛉 Shaw, Bria	n Black Tie	
	**		🛉 Snow, Cin	dy Black Tie	
			🛉 Strauss, Ju	lie Black Tie	
			🛉 Tonetoni,	Tony Black Tie	
			🛉 Tripper, Ja	ck Black Tie	-
					ncel
					8
					+=
					100
H4 4 1 of 1 → M	Food/Service Staff	ing Comments			
1011 1011					
	- : 特 贡 永 🖬 🖕 🗄	🍄 🌮 🔣 🐘 🔜	i 📝 🐳 🔽 🕂 % 💧	🔣 🖼 🍈 间 🥝 🤅	🗐 😹 🖉 🍦

## Adding Shifts to an Event

#### Can I keep track of how many waiters, bartenders, bus people, etc., I need to work a party?

In Caterease, you can choose to specifically identify which employees are going to work a particular event or simply determine how many shifts it will take to fully staff the event. This page discusses the latter.

#### Adding Shifts to an Event

- 1. In Event Manager, click the **Sub-Event** button.
- 2. Click the **Staffing** tab at the bottom of the window.
- 3. Click the **Select Staff** button , located on the upper right-hand side of the screen. **Result:** The Select Staffing window opens. Note: You can optionally establish Wizard rules for each of your shifts. For example, you can tell the program that for any party with a theme of "Wedding Reception," you need one bartender for every 15 guests, etc.; therefore the program will identify which events are understaffed.
- 4. Click any position ("Wait Staff," "Bartender," etc.), or optionally hold your [Ctrl] key down to select other positions simultaneously.

*Note:* You can also simply double-click an individual position to retrieve it.

5. Click **OK** at the bottom of the Select Staffing window. **Result:** The selected positions (shifts) are retrieved into the event. Note: You may want to display other shift details (Required, Price, Total, Hours, etc.), on the grid located on the Staffing tab, or on the Select Staffing window itself. Click the Quick Column Customizing button

at the top left of either grid to choose columns to display.



Click to view shift rule - 54 -

## **Copying Event Comments from the Scratch Pad**

#### What are event comments?

The **Comments** tab in the Sub-Event section of Event Manager is a place for you to enter the general special requests or notes concerning sub-events. These comments will print on your Contract and BEO, but can be suppressed, if desired.

#### **Copying from Scratch Pad**

- 1. Click the **Comments** tab at the bottom of the screen.
- 2. Click into the large white Comments text block.
- 3. Click the **Scratch Pad** button *S*, located at the bottom of the Event Manager screen.
- 4. Highlight the text you want to copy and press the **Insert Text** button.
- 5. Format the text by highlighting it and using the **Format** toolbar at the top of the screen or by highlighting the text, right-clicking, and selecting **Font**.



Click on the **Insert Text** button to insert the highlighted text

Click the Scratch Pad button to access commonly used text

# Unit 7: Booking a New Event Using the Event Wizard

Topics covered in this unit include:

Selecting a Customer for the Event Using the Incremental Search Tool Using Common Data-Entry Tools Entering Banquet Room Details Using the Room Selection Wizard Retrieving Menu Items Saving the Event

# **Booking a New Event Using the Event Wizard**

	Search Tools Det	ails Icon		Grid Too	ols
0	Step 1: Select An Account & Conta	ct			х
	Layouts -		/	🗄 😽 Settings 🕶	
Se	arch For	8			
* (	Client/Organization 🔷	City	St/Prov	Telephone	-
	Acoustics Associates	Ft. Myers	FL	(612) 544-8901	
	<ul> <li>Aid Association for Lutherans</li> </ul>	Ft. Myers	FL	(612) 535-7220	
	American Family Insurance	Ft. Myers	FL	(612) 420-9242	
	+ Bass Inc.	Ft. Myers	FL	(612) 272-9530	
>	+ CAM/USON Company	Naples	FL	(612) 208-3060	≡
	Chamber of Commerce	Ft. Myers	FL	(612) 540-0234	
	🗉 Collier County Bank	Naples	FL	(239) 444-8888	
	Crow Wedding Reception	Sanibel	FL	(239) 472-0011	
	🗉 Cruises & Vacations, Inc.	Ft. Myers	FL	(612) 835-5575	
	🗉 David Ames & Associates	Ft. Myers	FL	(612) 595-8970	
	🛨 Diebold Company	Ft. Myers	FL	(612) 378-4000	
	Ducks Unlimited	Ft. Myers	FL	(612) 645-6446	
	Dvorak Reception	Naples	FL	(612) 437-0783	
	🗉 East High School	Naples	FL	(218) 863-2911	
	Everblades Hockey	Naples	FL	(612) 741-6658	
	+ F.G.C.U	Ft. Myers	FL	(239) 590-6653	
	+ Glessing Wedding	Naples	FL	(612) 541-0444	
	+ GME Consultants	Ft. Myers	FL	(612) 559-1859	
	+ Goetz/Lyons Wedding Reception	Naples	FL	(612) 578-9843	
	+ Greg's Soccer Team	Naples	FL	(507) 253-1869	
	+ Gustave A. Larson Company	Captiva	FL	(612) 546-9508	
	Horizon Business Services	Ft. Myers	FL	(941) 261-6617	
	All adtach	Nanlos	CI .	/612) /15 1252	•
144	**************************************	IIII		<b>&gt;</b>	۲
(	🖓 Get More Help		Ne	xt 👻 Cance	el

Navigation Bar

## The Event Wizard Screen

Now that we've discussed adding events in detail, let's explore a quick and easy alternative: the Event Wizard. This option lets you add a new event in three easy steps: selecting an account (and optional contact person), entering basic details, and retrieving menu items.

You can access the Event Wizard from within your Event Manager screen, or you may click the **Event Wizard** button on the **Tools** sidebar on your Main screen. (*If you have the Professional or Standard version of Caterease, you can even add a new event from the Event Scheduler. See the Event Scheduler section for more information.*)

## Step One: Selecting an Account

#### Selecting an account

This first step allows you to select an account for your new event, as well as select a booking and/or site contact person. You can either choose an account that already exists in your database or add a new one.

#### **Selecting Accounts**

- 1. Click the Tools sidebar group on the left-hand side of your Main screen.
- 2. Click the **Event Wizard** button.
- 3. Either select an account for your new event or add a new account.
- 4. Click the plus sign button to the left of your selected account to access a drop-down list of contact people. *Note: If no list appears, no contact people have been added for this account. You can add a contact*

person here by clicking the **Show Details** button at the top of the Select Account window, then clicking the **Account Locked** button at the bottom left and confirming you would like to unlock the account.

5. Optionally select a contact person's name to default as the <u>Booking Contact</u> and/or <u>Site Contact</u> of your new event.

*Note:* In order for the name to default, you must have enabled this feature in New Booking Defaults. See the Setup section for more information.

Details button

6. Click **Next**. (*Note:* You may click the drop-down list to the right of the **Next** button to select any custom layouts.)

*Type a name into the Incremental Search field* 

Step 1: Select An Account	& Contact		/	: Settings •	×	
			• •	: Co Settings		
Search For	6	8   💣 🔟				
Client/Organization	<ul> <li>City</li> </ul>	1	St/Prov	Telephone	<b></b>	
🛨 Naples Dental Assoc.	Nap	les	FL	(239) 888-4321		
🛨 Natasha White	Nap	les	FL	(239) 896-1295		
🗄 North Naples Dart Leagu	ie Nap	les	FL	(612) 827-5588		
😟 Opportunity Workshop	Ft. I	Vyers	FL	(612) 930-4278		
+ P S S	Nap	les	FL	(612) 559-3333		
Polaris Industries	Nap	les	FL	(612) 829-8214		
🛨 Professional Developme	nt Institul Ft. I	/lyers	FL	(612) 774-5590		
🛨 Robert Hamilton Compa	ny Ft. I	Nyers	FL	(612) 544-1234		
🛨 Routh, Mara	Nap	les	FL	(239) 281-3888		
🗄 Salassa/Lau Wedding Re	ception Ft. I	Nyers	FL	(941) 555-2938		
<ul> <li>Schad Associates</li> </ul>	Nap	les	FL	(612) 944-2153		
🛨 Smith, Joan	Nap	les	FL	(239) 884-7222		
🛨 Softball Tournament	Ft. I	Nyers	FL	(507) 387-6031		
🕑 Solid Rock Church - Wo	mens Ret Nap	les	FL	(612) 427-1296		
🛨 Stephen McKenney - Ka	thryn Lev <sub>.</sub> Lon	donderry	NH	(603) 437-0555		
🛨 Sunset Tech.	Nap	les	FL	(239) 261-6617		
Sunset Technologies	Nap	les	FL	(239) 261-6617	≡	
* Last F	irst	Title		Telephone		
> Bland C	raig	General Mar	ager	(239) 261-6617		
Bland Ja	ared	Office Mana	ger	(239) 261-6617		
🗄 Taylor, Tom	Nap	les	FL	(239) 482-7488		
\pm USA Cup	Ft. I	Myers	FL	(612) 658-5599	-	
++ ++ ++ ++ ++ ++ ++ ++ ++ ++ ++ ++ ++	4				•	
<b>A a a a a a a a a a a</b>						

## **Step Two: Entering Basic Details**

#### **Filling in Event Fields**

This window lets you quickly fill some general details about your new event. Some of this information may default based on your program's New Booking Defaults. You can type over it here, or click down arrows in various fields to access quick-pick lists.

#### **Entering Details**

1. Optionally enter <u>Party Name</u>, <u>Sales Representative</u>, and other details in the Event Information section, either by typing directly into the fields or clicking the corresponding down arrows to access quick-pick lists.

*Note:* These quick-pick lists are yours to create and control. See the section on Setup for more information. As an alternative to clicking the down arrow, try typing into your <u>Sales Rep</u> or other quick-pick field. The quick-pick list will automatically scroll to match what you type.

- Optionally enter a guest count for your new event. Note: Your <u>Guaranteed</u> guest count might default to a certain percent of your <u>Planned</u> number; this is a setting you can control on the **Managers** tab of your program's Global Settings.
- 3. Enter a date and start/end times for your new event, either by typing directly into the fields or using the drop-down calendar (date) or up and down arrows (times).
- 4. Optionally enter a <u>Description</u>, <u>Type</u>, <u>Setup Style</u> and <u>Room</u> for your new event either by either by typing directly into the fields or clicking corresponding down arrows to access quick-pick lists.
- 5. When finished, click **OK**.
- 6. Click **Yes** at the prompt to retrieve menu items for your new event, or click **No** to simply edit the new event by hand.

Tip: This new event has not yet been saved. You will be prompted to save when you exit Event Manager, or you
can simply click the <b>Save Changes</b> button <b>[1991]</b> at the top of the screen in the Event Manager.

Some information may default from your New Booking Defaults

step 2: select	Event Fields					
Layouts •					: 👸 Setti	ngs 🕶
eneral Venue	e Delivery Site N	otes				
Event Inform	nation					
Party Name	Sunset Technologi	es	$\downarrow$			
Status	Tentative					-
Sales Rep	John Smith					-
Theme	Social					+
Category Reference	Meeting Banquet Wedding Receptio	n				
	Seminar Retirement					
Guests	Birthday Party					
Planned	Office Party	Date		→ NA	L .	
Actual		Start	÷	Serving		\$
Guaranteed		End	* *	Bar		¢
Sub-Event Ir	nformation					
Description						-
Туре	On-Premise					*

## Time Wizard

#### What is a time wizard?

The Time Wizard is a shortcut way to enter times for a sub-event using your mouse rather than the number keys on your keyboard.

- 1. On Step 2 of the Event Wizard, click the **Time Wizard** button
- 2. Click one of the the time-setting bars, hold your left mouse button down, and drag to the left or right.
- 3. Release the mouse button when the time is set as you want it.
- 4. Remove a time by clicking the time-setting bar with your right mouse button.
- 5. Click **OK** when finished. *Note:* To remove one of the times, click on it with your right mouse button, or simply highlight the text on the **General** tab of Event Manager and press your [**Delete**] key.

Drag-and-drop time bars



Right-click to remove time



## **Entering Room Details**

#### What is meant by "on premise" versus "off premise"?

You would consider an event "on-premise" if it were being held on your property - for example, in a banquet room. An event is "off-premise" if you are delivering food and supplies to another location. Entering room information for on-premise events allows Caterease to block that room space and check for any conflicts. Entering site location information is helpful for those events that are off-premise. Both sets of information can be entered in the Event Wizard.

#### **Adding Banquet Rooms**

- 1. From the **Venue** tab, click into the <u>Setup Style</u> field.
- 2. Click the down arrow to the right of the <u>Setup Style</u> field and select a setup style from the corresponding quick-pick list.
- 3. Click into the <u>Room</u> field.
- 4. Click the down arrow located at the right of the <u>Room</u> field and select a room from the corresponding quick-pick list. *Note:* The number next to each room name indicates the maximum capacity of guests in that room for the selected setup style. "NA" indicates that the selected setup style is not recognized for that room.

	ent Fields				2			
💶 Layouts 🔹 🔤 Settings 🔹 🏣								
General Venue D	elivery Site Notes							
Variat Information								
venue informat	ion							
Setup Style	Banquet	•	Setup	01:00	\$			
Setup Person	Greg	<b>*</b>	Tear Down	00:30	÷			
Room	Sand-Sun	<b>▼</b>						
Room Category	Ballroom	-						
Room Chg	250.00	-						

## **Room Selection Wizard**

#### Can't the program just pick a room for me?

Well, that would be magic, wouldn't it? Try the Room Selection Wizard. This powerful tool will consider the date, time, setup style, and guest count of the party you are booking and will automatically choose the best matching room for that criteria. It will even show all other rooms as well as their availability.

#### Accessing the Room Selection Wizard

- 1. In Event Wizard, be sure to fill out date, guest count, time, and setup style information.
- 2. Click the **Room Selection Wizard** button (ellipse). The best matching room for your sub-event will be highlighted in green.

#### Using the Wizard

Below are some suggestions for using the Room Selection Wizard:

- Click **OK** to accept the selected room, or simply double-click the room name.
- Select another room, setup style, or both, if desired, and click **OK**.
- Click the **View Conflicts** button is to see reasons certain rooms are unavailable (highlighted in red).
- Click the **View** menu to optionally display room notes and picture or associated breakout rooms and setup styles.
- Click the **Settings** button for other options for the Wizard, such as allowing the selection of unavailable rooms, automatically showing the recommended room, or showing grid lines.
- Click Settings > Conflict Settings to optionally have the Wizard track booking conflicts or capacity conflicts.
- Click the **Quick Column Customizing** button to add other columns of information to the Wizard display, including room charge, default diagram, location, etc.



## Step Three: Retrieving Menu Items

#### **Retrieving menu items**

Menu items can be retrieved into an event from your pre-existing menus or unique items can be added to an event by hand. Step 3 in the Event Wizard opens your new event in the Event Manager and automatically opens the Select Menu Items window for you to retrieve items.

#### **Retrieving items**

- 1. Select a menu title on the left-hand side of the Select Menu Items window.
- 2. Select a single menu item or multiple items using the following guidelines:
  - Click an item to select it.
  - Hold your left mouse button down and drag your cursor over multiple items.
  - Click one item, hold the **[Ctrl]** button down on your keyboard and click other items.
- 3. Drop items from your menus onto your Food/Service tab using the following guidelines:
  - Double-click a single item in the Select Menu Items window.
    - Hold your mouse button down on one individual item (without moving) for a half-second and drag that item from the Select Menu Items window onto your **Food/Service** tab.
  - Hold your left mouse button down on a group of selected items and drag and drop them onto the **Food/Service** tab.
  - Click the **Select Items** button.
  - Click **OK**.

*Note:* Click the *Insert Mode* button to retrieve menu items in specific positions on the *Food/Service* tab of your event.

4. Click in the <u>Oty</u> column on the **Food/Service** tab and enter a quantity for each menu item.

Click Insert Mode button to place items above other items



## Saving the Event

#### What happens if I forget to save an event?

Relax – you can't forget. If you close your Event Manager or even your entire Caterease program, you will be asked if you want to save your changes. If you navigate away from an order (by searching for a different order or using your navigation buttons to scroll to a different order), it is an implied Save; your changes are saved automatically.

#### Saving Changes

- 1. Click the **Save Changes** button at the top of the Caterease screen.
- 2. Click **OK** *after carefully reviewing any prompt* that might appear; or click **Cancel**, make corrections to the order, and repeat Step 1.

If you are prompted as to a conflict (staffing or room), be sure to review the exact details of the problem by clicking the **View Conflict** button

0	Event Manage	er: Sunset Te	chnologies # E00457							-	= x
					🕴 🛄 Layou	ts 🕶 🕴 🜃	Go To 👻 9/10	/2013	🗸 🕴 😹 Settings 🕶		-
	-Client/Organiz	ation Informa	ation								
	Client/Organ	ization Si	unset Technologies		Subtotal					\$78	3.75 🔍
	Address	10 N	600 Third Street Japles EL 34102				Serv Chg Tax			5(	3.88
	Telephone	(2	Warning								
	Fax	(2	wanning								
	🏥 Event 🔒	Sub-Event	1 The Following	g Room Bookin	g Conflicts H	lave Been D	etected				
			Room	Date	Start	End	Setup	Tear Dn	Setup Style	Guests	
	Description	Lunch Buff	Lunch Buffet	7 (2012	12.00		01.00	00.20		00.400.0	2
	Date	7/2/2013 (1 12:00 DM	Double Booking	//2/2013 # E00473 S	12:00 pm and-Sup from	04:00 pm 11:00 am to	4:30 pm	00:30		90 (Gtd)	
	End	04:00 PM	D'odbie Dooking	#200410,0	ana san nom	11:00 din to	4.00 pm				
	Setup Style	Banquet									
	Room	Sand-Sun									
										Clo	se
											<b>F</b>
											<b>†⊞</b>
											+
	₩ ◀ 1 of 1	► ₩	Eood/	Service Staffir	Comme	nts					
			: 耕 🖶	& 🖬 🖕 🕈	¥ 🌮 🕅	: 🔝	🕑 🖋	⊽ 🔗 %	6 🔀 🖻 🚯	0 🛤 😺	<b>\$</b> =

# Unit 8: Booking a New Event from the Scheduler

Topics covered in this unit include:

Changing the Sub-Event Calendar Grouping Modifying Event Information from the Calendar Accessing the Event Wizard from Sub-Event Calendar

## Viewing the Sub-Events Scheduler

#### Can the Event Scheduler show detailed venue information?

Sure it can. With just a couple of mouse clicks, you can turn your Scheduler into a bar graph, showing which events are held in which locations at what times. You can even drag and drop events from one venue to another, one time to another, even one date to another. Since these details are specifically sub-event details, the first thing you must do is access the Sub-Event calendar.

#### **Displaying Sub-Events**

- 1. Click the Scheduler button on the Main sidebar group to open the Scheduler.
- 2. On the **Home** ribbon at the top of the screen, click **Display > Sub-Events**.

#### Grouping by Venue or Other Detail

- 1. In the Sub-events calendar, click the down arrow in **Group By**, at the top of the ribbon.
- 2. Choose <u>Room</u>, <u>Site Name</u>, or other detail.

#### **Displaying Groups in Bar Graph Format**

- 1. Group your sub-events calendar as described above.
- 2. Click the **Da**y button.

*Note:* You can see more or fewer groups (or bars in the graph) by clicking the plus or minus sign in the navigation bar at the bottom left of the graph.

💿 📷 🎝 🕷 =											
Home Select	Reports Display Administration Help 😞 🖲										
A Cut Calibri Paste Dundo Clipboard Scheduler X	12     A     Image: Sub-Event Options     Image: Sub-Event OptionSub-Event Opt										
	💿 Scheduler 🥁 Reminders 🗆 🗙										
Account Manager  Event Manager  Day Week Month Year Show As Day View Options Time Unit 30 Minutes P											
Si Employee Manager	Ocean Sand Sun Sea Sand-Sun 🔺 🕻 December, 2012 🕨										
III Scheduler	Tuesday, December 04         8 00       30       30       30       30       30       30       30       30       11 00       10:00am-2:30pm       10:00am-2:3										
Main Tools	30     Status Tentaive Description Luncheo 30     Status Tentaive Description Luncheo Status Served     Description Luncheo Description Luncheo Sales Rep-Roxanne M. M. Namer Planned-30       200     Actual-20       33v     Actual-150										
Queries	Fyent # Client/Organization Description Room Start End Planned Actual Guarantee										
Setup     Image: System      Cuent/Organization     Description     room     Statt     End     Planed     Actual     Guarantee       System           Image: System											
	Scheduler CAPS NUM SCRL INS										

## **Modifying Event Information**

#### What type of event information can be modified in the Scheduler?

There are several details about an event that you can modify from the Scheduler screen. Most impressively, in the Sub-Events calendar you can drag and drop event "bars" (those color-coded bars that indicate when and where an event is being held) from any group to another, meaning you can move them from one sales rep to another, one venue to another, one time to another, one day to another, and more! You can also stretch and shrink those bars, thereby changing the corresponding event's start and end times.

#### **Dragging Events from Group to Group**

- 1. Group sub-events in the Scheduler by any detail, as discussed on the previous page.
- 2. Hold your left mouse button down over any event bar on the Scheduler screen.
- 3. Drag the bar to another group and then release it.

#### **Stretching and Shrinking Bars**

- 1. Display events in a bar graph format, as described on the previous pages.
- 2. Float your mouse pointer (without clicking) over the top or bottom of any event bar on the Scheduler screen until it becomes a double-headed arrow.
- 3. Hold your left mouse button down and drag the edge of the bar upward or downward.
- 4. Release your mouse button. This highlights a period of time. Right-click to then add an event there.

🔞 Sch	🚳 Scheduler — 🗖 🛪														
🗄 🐨 GoTo 🔹 🎤 Tools 🔹 🔛 Settings 🔹 🗔															
Day	/	Week	Month	Yea	r Show	As Day View 👻	Options 🕶	Time Unit	30 Minutes	- 100	•				
All Lo	All Locations Ballrooms Sunset Rooms Undefined														
Sand Sun			un	Sea	Sun	Sun-Sea		July	y, 2013 ►						
		Tuesday, July 02 Tuesday, July 02		7, July 02	Tuesday, July 02	Tuesday, July 02		Tuesday, July 02		SMT	WTFS				
				_							27 30 1 2 28 7 8 9	3 4 5 6 10 11 12 13			
					Confirm		X				<sup>29</sup> <b>14 15</b> 16	17 18 19 20			
9.	00				CI	hange the Sub-Event's r					30 21 22 23 31 <b>28</b> 29 30	31 1 2 3			
	30				<b>S</b>	ann Canad Sum					32 4 5 6	7 8 9 10			
10	00				To	o Sun-Sea					Include I	n View			
4.4	00			Continue?								ys			
11.	30			Sunset Technologies											
12	pm			Yes No Party Name-Company Breakout Rooms											
12.	30			Luncheon Status-Definite											
1	00								Description-Lund Buffet	h					
	30								Sales Rep-Kathy Wilson						
2	00								Planned-100 Actual-						
	30														
3.	00														
H4 PH	+ -	4													
							▼								
* Ever	nt #	Client/	Organizatio	'n		Description	Room	Start	End F	Planned	Actual	Guarantee 🛗 d			
E004	E00457 Sunset Technologies			Lunch Buffet	Sand-Sun 12:00 F		M 04:00 PM 10		0 0 90						

Click and drag/drop events to a new room; Copfirm

## Accessing Event Wizard from the Sub-Event Calendar (Seeimage on following page.)

#### I can do this right from here?

Yes, you can - if you have the Professional or Standard version of Caterease! Right from this Scheduler screen, you can add an event, including client information, room, times (Start, End, Setup, Tear Down), plus a host of other event and sub-event details. Then, when you're done, you can choose to open this event in Event Manager and edit it further (perhaps adding menu items, etc.), or you can remain in the Scheduler to review other dates or perhaps add more events.

1. Group your Sub-events calendar, as described on the previous page, and click the **Day** or **Week** view button Week.

*Note:* Steps 1-4 are designed to optimize the event booking process. You can simply skip to Step 5, below, and fill in event date, times, and other information by hand.

- 2. Find a specific time and date that you would like to hold your new event.
- 3. In the appropriate group for your new event, hold your left mouse button down on the Scheduler screen at the time you want your new event to start.
- 4. Drag your left mouse button down until you reach your desired end time and then release your mouse button.
- 5. Click your right mouse button and select Add a New Event.
- 6. Select an account for your new event, or add a new account.
- 7. **[Optional]** Click the plus sign button to the left of your selected account and select a contact person's name to default as the <u>Booking</u> and/or <u>Site Contact</u> of your new event.
- 8. Click Next.
- 9. Enter <u>Party Name</u>, <u>Sales Representative</u>, and other details as desired in the Event Information section, either by typing directly into the fields or clicking corresponding down arrows to access quick-pick lists.
- 10. [Optional] Enter a guest count for your new event.
- 11. [Optional] Adjust the <u>Setup</u> and <u>Tear Down</u> times for the event.
- 12. **[Optional]** Enter a <u>Description</u>, <u>Type</u>, and <u>Setup Style</u> for your new event either by either by typing directly into the fields or clicking corresponding down arrows to access quick-pick lists.
- 13. When finished, click **OK**. *Result:* Your new event is saved, and a prompt appears, asking if you would like to open it in Event Manager.
- 14. Click **Yes** to continue editing your new event in Event Manager (adding menu items, etc.), or **No** to remain in the Scheduler.


## Unit 9: Booking a New Event from Account Manager

Topics covered in this unit include:

Introducing the Account Manager Display Finding a Specific Account Adding a New Event from the Events Tab

## **ACCOUNT MANAGER**



## Account Manager Screen

The Account Manager shows you all information pertinent to any account in your database. From Account Manager, you can see a list of all Contact names, Events, Reminders, and History notes associated with a particular account.

You can easily edit any of this information by selecting an item and clicking the **View** button. Open an event in order to make changes, edit the text of a history note, even respond to a reminder quickly and easily! As with other Managers in Caterease, the Account Manager makes use of the main toolbars across the top of your screen. These are the buttons you would use to add a new account, delete the current account, navigate from account to account, etc.

## Adding Events from Account Manager

### I thought I had to add events through Event Manager?

As you may already know, adding events to Caterease needs to be done in Event Manager. Yet here we are, discussing the option of adding events from Account Manager. Caterease is designed, intentionally, to give you the ability to zigzag all over the place - to go where you want to go in the program whenever you want to go there. Therefore, if you ever find yourself looking at account information in Account Manager, and have the thought that you need to add an event for that customer, one mouse click will take you right into Event Manager and place you on a brand-new event with all of that customer's information.

## **Adding an Event**

- 1. Click the Events tab in the bottom window of Account Manager (if it is not already selected).
- 2. Click the **Add New Event** button  $\Box^*$ , located on the lower right-hand side of the Account Manager screen. *Note:* This button is identical to the **Add New Record** button at the top of the Caterease screen, which is used to add new accounts. Don't confuse them.
- 3. Click **Yes** to confirm your choice. You will be taken into Event Manager and placed on a brand-new event for that customer. Enter event information as described in the previous chapter.

**Tip:** You also have access to the Event Wizard from the Account Manager **Events** tab. (*See the Event Wizard section for more information on how to use this tool.*)

Account Manager: Sunset Technolog	gies # A01502				- =
			📃 🛄 Layouts	🔹 🕴 😼 Settings 🕶	
Custom: 🔟 Views 🕶 🌱 Filters 🕶	General Miscellaneo	ous	Notes	Directions Allergy	Picture
Client/Organization					
Microage I	Client/Organization	Sunset Technologies	Custo	mer has peanut a	allergy.
Microtech Hearing Inst.	Address	1600 Third Street			
MSUS/PALS I	City	Naples			
NACM					
Naples City Police Department	St/Prov	FL Postal 34102			
Naples Dental Assoc.	Telephone	(239) 261-6617			
Natasha White I	Fay	(239) 261-0067			
North Naples Dart League	1 dX	(233) 201-0007			
Opportunity Workshop I	Cellular	() -			
P S S I	Email				
Polaris Industries	•				
Professional Development Institu					
Robert Hamilton Company I					1
Routh, Mara	Event # Event	nt Date Party Name	Category	Sales Rep	Theme
Salassa/Lau Wedding Reception	E00494 11/2	1/2012 Sunset Technologi	es Special Event	Kathy Wilson	Social
Schad Associates I	E00493 12/1	4/2012 Sunset Technologi	es Social	Kathy Wilson	Birthday Party
Smith, Joan I	E00473 12/2	9/2012 Sunset Technologi	es Social	John Smith	Birthday Party
Softball Tournament					
Solid Rock Church - Womens Re I					
Stephen McKenney - Kathryn Le I					
Sunset Technologies					
Taylor, Tom I					
USA Cup I					/
Warner Electric/Dana Corp.					
Wedding Template I	4			/	•
Wiggins, Goodlette & Davis P.A				/	,
	Contacts Events G	uestrooms Reminders <u>Co</u>	ntact History		1
🐌 Master Accounts				🏏 🖓 🖙 📮 🖠	🕅 わ 🚯

Optionally click the Event Wizard button

Be sure to select the Events tab

## **SECTION 2: Accounts (Customers)**

## Unit 10: Adding a New Account in Account Manager

Topics covered in this unit include:

Adding a New Account Filling Out the Miscellaneous Tab Adding Contacts to an Account

## Adding a New Account

#### Haven't I already learned to add an account?

We have already discussed adding an account as you book a new event. But what if you want to enter account information for no other reason than to have it on file for the future? This is where Account Manager comes in.

#### Adding an Account

- 1. Access the Account Manager by clicking the Account Manager button on the sidebar.
- 2. Click the Add New Record button <sup>1</sup>, located in the main toolbar at the top of your Caterease screen.
- 3. Click **Yes** to confirm your choice.
- 4. Type the name of your new account and press your [Enter] key to move to the next field.
- 5. Continue to fill out the fields as desired, pressing **[Enter]** or **[Tab]** after each one to move to the next field.

Enter account information								
Account Manager: New Account # AC	1293							- = x
	$\backslash$			: 11	Lavouts	- : : : : : : : : : : : : : : : : : : :	Settings •	
				. =	<b>,</b>			
Custom: Division Views • Y Filters •	General Miscellaneo	ous			Notes	Directions	Allergy Pic	ture
Client/Organization	Client/Ordenization	New Account						
New Account	cherty organization	New Account						
Acoustics Associates	Address							
And Association for Lutherans	City	Naples						
American Family Insurance	St/Prov	FL Postal						
CAM/USON Company								
Chamber of Commerce	Telephone	() -						
Collier County Bank	Fax	() -						
Crow Wedding Reception	Cellular	() -						
Cruises & Vacations. Inc.								
David Ames & Associates	Email							
Diebold Company I								
Ducks Unlimited								
Dvorak Reception I	* Last	First T	tle T	elephor	ne		Fax	
East High School								
Everblades Hockey								
F.G.C.U.								
Glessing Wedding								
GME Consultants I								
Goetz/Lyons Wedding Receptior I			<no data="" td="" to<=""><td>display</td><td>&gt;</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></no>	display	>			
Greg's Soccer Team								
Gustave A. Larson Company								
Horizon Business Services								
Jones, Sue								
Ladtech								
Lebron Corporation		Dent.	Contract Fra					
	Contacts Events G	uestrooms Remind	ers Contact Hist	ory				[] [] [] [] [] [] [] [] [] [] [] [] [] [
Master Accounts					1	🎾 🗄 🐖	9 😵 🚺	- 18 🕈
								1

Add contact people

## Filling Out the Miscellaneous Tab

#### What is the Miscellaneous tab all about?

When you are adding a new account to the program, the **Miscellaneous** tab allows you to enter some important details you can use to track the account. The fields on this tab are mostly "quick-pick" fields, meaning you can choose data from drop-down lists that are under your control. All of the details on this tab reflect the account you are in the process of adding.

### Filling out the Miscellaneous Tab

- 1. While adding an account, click the **Miscellaneous** tab.
- 2. Click the down arrow at the right of any field and choose from the corresponding quick-pick list (you can customize these lists).
- 3. Click the checkbox next to **Tax Exempt** if events for this account should default to tax exempt. *Note: Click the checkbox to the left of* **Tax Exempt** *if you want to enter a tax exempt number for the account.*
- 4. **[Optional]** Enter an expiration date of the tax exemption, or access the drop-down calendar to select a date.

### Adding or Removing a Field (See Unit 13 for more information)

- 1. Click your right mouse button anywhere on the Miscellaneous tab.
- 2. Select Customize.
- 3. Hold your left mouse button down on the name of any tab or field.
- 4. Drag that field name into the Available Items window to remove a field from the screen; drag an item from the Available Items pane onto your screen to add a field.
- 5. Repeat as desired.
- 6. Click **Close** when finished. (Remember to click the **Save Current Window Settings** button **i** f you wish to set this as your new default arrangement.)

2		<u> </u>											
🥝 Account Manager: Acme Corpora	tion	# A01593										- 0	a x
							Ħ	Layout	s • 🕴 😽	Settings <del>•</del>		<u>н</u> 🖬	
Custom: 🔯 Views 🗸 🤎 Filters 🕇		Cananal				-	11	Notor	Disastians	Alleren	Distant		
Client/Organization		General	viiscellar	leous			- I	Notes	Directions	Allergy	Picture		
Client/Organization	_	Category				-							
Acoustics Associates		Deference	. +										
Aid Association for Lutherans		Kerereno	· _ ]	1									
American Family Insurance		Descripti	on	\		<b>*</b>							
Bass Inc.		Sales Rep	•	$\lambda$		<b>*</b>							
CAM/USON Company		Tax Exe	empt	•		\$							
Chamber of Commerce													
Collier County Bank		🔲 Tax	Exempt										
Crow Wedding Reception		Exempt	#										
Cruises & Vacations, Inc.		Expires				-							
David Ames & Associates													
Diebold Company I													- 1
Ducks Unlimited													
Dvorak Reception		* Last		First	Title	Tele	phor	ne		Fax			Ē
East High School I	•												
Everblades Hockey													Ø
F.G.C.U.													++
Glessing Wedding I													
GME Consultants I													
Goetz/Lyons Wedding Receptior I						<no data="" di<="" td="" to=""><td>splay</td><td>&gt;</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></no>	splay	>					
Greg's Soccer Team													
Gustave A. Larson Company													
Horizon Business Services													
Jones, Sue													
Ladtech I													
Lebron Corporation	-		<b>F F</b>	<b>a</b> .	<b>n</b>	o							<u>ل</u>
▲ IIII → IIIII → IIII → IIIII → IIIIII		Contacts	Events	Guestrooms	Reminders	Contact History	ſ						‡盟
🐒 Master Accounts									f 🌮 🗄 🐺	a 📑 😵	2 4	6	18

Right-click and choose Customize to remove fields or add fields

## Adding Contacts to an Account

#### Shouldn't I add contact people in Account Manager?

Contact people, like accounts, can be added in Event Manager as well as in Account Manager. Here we address adding contact people as you enter in a new event.

#### Adding a Contact Person

- 1. Click the Add A New Contact button, located at the lower right of the Select Account form. *Note: This button is identical to the Add New Account button at the top of the form. Be careful not to confuse them.*
- 2. In the form that pops up, type the last name of the new contact person.
- 3. Press your [Enter] or [Tab] key to move to the next field.
- 4. Continue to fill out contact information as desired, pressing your **[Enter]** or **[Tab]** key to move from field to field.
- 5. In quick-pick fields such as <u>Title</u>, click the down arrow at the right of the field and pick an option from the corresponding list.
- 6. **[Optional]**Click the **Credit Card Information** button , select a credit card from the quick-pick list, and type in the remaining credit card information.
- 7. **[Optional]**Click on the **Notes** tab and type any notes pertinent to this particular contact person. These notes do not print anywhere; they are merely here for your reference. You can format the text you enter into this Notes text block by clicking your right mouse button and choosing **Font**.
- 8. **[Optional]** Click on the **Picture** tab, click your right mouse button, and select **Load From File** if you want to include a digital image of this contact person.
- 9. When finished, click the **OK** button at the bottom of the form to close the form and save your changes.

💿 Contact:	Un-Assigned		3	x
		i 📑 🕞 Cop	oy To Client 🕴 😸 Settings 🕶 📮	
General	Contact			
Picture	Last Name			
	First Name			
	Salutation			
	Title		•	
	Telephone	(239) 261-6617		
	Fax	(239) 261-0067		
	Cellular	(239) 261-8788		
	Email			
	Address		*	
	Address	1020 Gulfshore Blvc	I	
	Address (Other)			
	City	Naples		
	St/Prov	FL	Postal 34102	
			OK <u>C</u> ancel	٦

#### Click to enter default credit card information

## Unit 11: Adding an Account in Event Wizard

Topics covered in this unit include:

Entering General and Miscellaneous Details Adding a Contact Person

## Adding an Account in Event Wizard

### What if the client I want isn't on the list?

You can add a new client while in the process of booking an event in Event Wizard. The process you use and the details you enter are very similar to those in Account Manager – and will be available throughout the entire program.

#### Adding a New Account

- 1. Click the **Tools** sidebar group on the left-hand side of your **Main** screen.
- 2. Click the **Event Wizard** button.

*Note:* You can also access the *Event Wizard* button at the bottom of the Event Manager screen (if you have added the button to the toolbar, or you may access it from the button at the top left-hand side of the screen.

3. Click the green plus sign button at the top of the Wizard screen to add a new account.

Enter the name of the new client

Click the Add A New	Contact	button to	o add a new	contact person
---------------------	---------	-----------	-------------	----------------

Account Detai	ls			Х
		👔 🔑 Tools	🔹 💞 🕴 😼 Settings 🕶	
General Miscellaneous Notes Allergy Directions Picture	Client/Organization Address City St/Prov Telephone Fax Cellular Email	New Account Naples FL ( ) - ( ) - ( ) -	Postal	
* Last	First	Title	Telephone	
	< No	data to display>		
Account Ur	nlocked		OK Can	cel

Fill in Miscellaneous information as desired

## **Adding a Contact Person**

## Can I add contact people on-the fly in the Wizard?

Contact people, like accounts and events, can be added in various places throughout Caterease, including the Event Wizard!

#### **Adding a Contact Person**

- 1. Click the Add A New Contact button, located at the lower right of the Account Details form.
- 2. In the form that pops up, type the last name of the new contact person into the Last Name field.
- 3. Press your [Enter] or [Tab] key to move to the next field.
- 4. Continue to fill out contact information as desired, pressing your **[Enter]** or **[Tab]** key to move from field to field.
- 5. In quick-pick fields, such as <u>Title</u>, click the down arrow at the right of the field and pick an option from the corresponding quick-pick list.
- 6. Click the **Credit Card Information** button , select a credit card from the quick-pick list, and then type in the remaining credit card information.
- 7. **[Optional]** Click on the **Notes** tab and type any notes pertinent to this particular contact person. These notes do not print anywhere; they are merely here for your reference. You can format the text you enter into this **Notes** tab by highlighting the text, clicking your right mouse button, and choosing **Font**.
- 8. **[Optional]** Click on the **Picture** tab, click your right mouse button, and select **Load From File** if you want to include a digital image of this contact person.
- 9. When finished, click the **OK** button at the bottom right of the form to close the form and save your changes.

🔞 Contact	: Un-Assigned	x
		i 🔄 🕞 Copy To Client 🕴 😼 Settings 👻 🏹
General	Cantact	
Notes	Contact	
Picture	Last Name	
	First Name	
	Salutation	
	Title	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
	Telephone	() -
	Fax	() -
	Cellular	() -
	Email	
	Address	*
	Address	
	Address (Other)	
	City	Naples
	St/Prov	FL Postal 34102

## Unit 12: Adding a New Account in Other Ways

Topics covered in this unit include:

Adding a New Account in Event Manager Adding a New Customer Who is Not A Company

## Adding a New Account in Event Manager

#### How does an existing customer differ from a new one?

If you wish to add a new event for a new customer, that means you have never done any business with that customer before; that company's information has not yet been entered into Caterease. If, however, your new event is for an existing customer, that company's information is already in the program - you need only retrieve it. Once the details of a particular client have been entered into Caterease, you never have to type them a second time. *Note: This topic discusses adding a new event manually from within Event Manager. As an option, see the chapter on using the Event Wizard.* 

## Adding a New Event

- 1. Access Event Manager by clicking the Event Manager button from the Main Caterease sidebar.
- 2. Click the Add Record button , located at the top of your Caterease screen.
- 3. Click **Yes** to confirm your choice.

Search for an existing	g account			Add a new	account to your	syste
💿 s	Select Account			/		X
			/		🚦 😽 Settings 🕶	-
Sea	arch For su		🖓 📑 🔽			
* C	lient/Organization		City	St/Prov	Telephone	-
( t	Naples City Police Depa	artment	Naples	FL	(239) 777-1234	
E	Naples Dental Assoc.		Naples	FL	(239) 888-4321	
Œ	🛙 Natasha White		Naples	FL	(239) 896-1295	
Œ	New Account		Naples	FL	() -	
Œ	New Account		Naples	FL	() -	
Œ	North Naples Dart Leag	jue	Naples	FL	(612) 827-5588	
( t	Opportunity Workshop		Ft. Myers	FL	(612) 930-4278	
Œ	PSS		Naples	FL	(612) 559-3333	
	Polaris Industries		Naples	FL	(612) 829-8214	
( t	Professional Developm	ent Institul	Ft. Myers	FL	(612) 774-5590	
	Robert Hamilton Comp	bany	Ft. Myers	FL	(612) 544-1234	
	Salassa/Lau Wedding R	eception	Ft. Myers	FL	(941) 555-2938	
	Schad Associates		Naples	FL	(612) 944-2153	_
±	Softball Tournament		Ft. Myers	FL	(507) 387-6031	
( t	Solid Rock Church - W	omens Ret	Naples	FL	(612) 427-1296	
E E	Stephen McKenney - K	athryn Lev	Londonderry	NH	(603) 437-0555	
±	Sunset Tech.		Naples	FL	(239) 261-6617	=
E	Sunset Technologies		Naples	FL	(239) 261-6617	
	* Last	First	Title		Telephone	
>	> Bland 🛒	Craig	General N	/lanager	(239) 261-6617	
	Bland	Jared	Office Ma	anager	(239) 261-2311	
	Bland	Jimmy	Owner		(239) 261-0288	
E E E E E E E E E E E E E E E E E E E	El USA Cun	4	Ft. Mvers	FI	(612) 658-5599	
144	** * ** **	•	IIII			•
				0	OK Canc	el

Optionally select a contact person

## Adding a New Customer Who is Not a Company

### What if my customer is an individual, as opposed to a company?

In Caterease, there is an easy, shortcut way to enter individuals as customers – so you never have to type the same thing more than once!

- 1. In Account Manager, click the Add New Record button 1. In Accou
  - **Result:** A confirmation message appears.
- 2. Click **Yes** to confirm your choice. *Note:* Don't fill out any general account details; immediately move on to Step 4.
- 3. Verify that the **Contacts** tab at the bottom of the Account Manager is currently selected.
- 4. Click the **Add A New Contact** button , located on the right-hand side of Account Manager. *Note: This button is identical to the Add Record button you clicked in Step 2, above. Be careful not to confuse them.*

Result: A New Contact window appears for you to enter contact person information.

- 5. Type the last name of the new contact person.
- 6. Press your [Enter] or [Tab] key. *Result:* Your cursor moves to the next field.
- 7. Continue to fill out contact information as desired, pressing **[Enter]** or **[Tab]** to move from field to field. *Note: Drop-down quick-pick lists are offered for fields such as* <u>*Title, and can be customized by you (see Editing Quickpick Lists).*</u>
- 8. Click the **Copy To Client** button, located at the top right of the New Contact window. *Result:* All name and address information from the contact person is copied into the respective fields for the client.

*Note:* Any existing client details (if you have already typed an address for the client, for example) will NOT be overwritten; however, you can hold your [Shift] key down as you click Copy To Client to have ALL contact person information replace existing client details, if you want.

9. Click **OK** to close.

Click to copy the contact information to the account General fields,

Add the Contact first

		Contact	: Un-Assigned	1			X		4 💷 1
ustom: 🔊 Views 🕶 🌱 Filters 🕶	Ger	-		E 🔄 🔂 Copy	To Client	😹 Settings 🕶		y Picture	
Client/Organization	CI Ac Cir St Fa Ce En	General Notes Picture	Contact Last Name First Name Salutation Title Pax Cellular Email Address Address Address Address (Other) City St/Prov	Charles Mr. Oakley Owner (239) 492-9997 (239) 384-7299 (239) 383-2847 c_oakley@aol.con	Postal [34]	Securitys *		34-7299	

## **Unit 13: Advanced Account Management**

Topics covered in this unit include:

Deleting an Account Viewing/Editing Contact Details Viewing/Editing Events Generating a Billing Statement Generating Reports Posting Payments to an Account Combining Duplicate Accounts Creating a Default Site Location

## **Deleting a Current Account**

### How do I get rid of an old account?

As this page shows, you cannot delete any accounts that have associated records such as room contracts, events, reminders, etc.; these records must be deleted first, before the account can be removed from your database.

#### **Deleting an Account**

- 1. Check the **Events** tab, **Reminders** tab, **Contact History** tab and **Guestrooms** tab of Account Manager to confirm that there are no events booked for the current account. Caterease will not allow you to delete an account that has events assigned to it.
- 2. Click on the account you would like to delete (from the grid) and then click the **Delete Record** button, located on the toolbar at the top of the screen.

**Result:** A confirmation prompt appears.

Click Yes to confirm your choice.
 *Result: The account will be permanently removed.*

Caterease will prompt you to confirm your choice

Confirm	x
Delete Account: "ACME Corp." ?	
Yes No	

You must first delete any events associated with the account



## **Viewing or Editing Contact Details**

## How do I change existing contact information?

You can edit any contact information you have entered into Caterease quickly and easily, following the steps below.

### **Editing Contact Details**

- 1. Click the **Contacts** tab in the bottom window of Account Manager (if it is not already selected).
- 2. Select one of the contact people listed on that tab to edit.
- 3. Click the **Show Contact Details** button 2. located on the lower right of your Account Manager form.

Click Show Contact Details button

- 4. Click any tab on the Contact form and edit information as desired, as described on the previous page.
- 5. When finished, click **OK** to save your changes.

	1 . # 404	1500		
Account Manager: Sunset Techr	iologies # A01	1502		- = ×
			📑 Layouts 🕶	😿 Settings 🕶 🗔 🕴 🐺 📰 📲 🥫
Custom: 🔟 Views 🗸 🍟 Filters	- C	al last ii	Nature Di	ms Alleray Picture
Client/Organization	💿 Contact:	: Jimmy Bland	x	, in the gy treater
Microage			🔄 📑 🕞 Copy To Client 🕴 😽 Settings 🕶 🗔	as peanut allergy.
Microtech Hearing Inst.				
MSUS/PALS	General	Contact		
NACM	Notes			
Naples City Police Department	Picture	Last Name	Bland	
Naples Dental Assoc.	I	First Name	Jimmy	
Natasha White	I	Salutation	limmy	
New Account	I	Surdiation		
New Account	I	litle	Owner 👻	
North Naples Dart League	1	Telephone	(239) 261-0288	
Opportunity Workshop	1	Fax	(239) 261-0067	
PSS				
Polaris Industries	1	Cellular	(239) 767-8888	
Professional Development Institu		Email		Fax
Robert Hamilton Company				(239) 261-0067
Salassa/Lau Wedding Reception	1	Address	*	(239) 261-0067
Schad Associates				(239) 261-0067
Softball Tournament	1	Address	1600 Third Street	
Solid Rock Church - Womens Re		Address (Other)		
Stephen McKenney - Kathryn Le		City	Naples	
Sunset Tech.		St/Drow	El Bartal 24102	
Sunset Technologies		50/2100		
USA Cup				
Warner Electric/Dana Corp.			OK Cancel	
Winging Coodlette & Druit D.A.				
wiggins, Goodlette & Davis P.A	Conta	cts Events Guest	trooms Reminders Contact History	A
				Į
🎒 Master Accounts			🛛 🕴 🌮	i 🏳 🗳 🔣 🏝 🚯 👹 :

Enter or edit information

## **Viewing or Editing Events**

### Don't I have to be in Event Manager to do this?

As with adding events from Account Manager, we are looking here at the flexibility of Caterease. If you want to retrieve an event in Caterease, you of course have to end up in Event Manager. However, here again the program allows you to zigzag from one location to another. In this case, you are in Account Manager and you decide you want to take a closer look at a particular event a customer has held (or is holding) with you. One mouse click will not only open Event Manager for you, but will place you on the exact event you want to examine.

### Viewing/Editing an Event

- 1. Click the Events tab in the bottom window of Account Manager (if it is not already selected).
- 2. Select one of the events listed on that tab.
- 3. Click the **Select** button, *(*, located on the lower right of the Account Manager screen.
- 4. Click **Yes** to confirm your choice. You will be taken into Event Manager and placed on the event which you selected.

Account Manager: Sunset Technolog	ies # A01502				- = >
			🗄 🧮 Layouts 🕶	🕴 😼 Settings 🕶	<b>□</b> :
Custom: 🔎 Views 🕶 🌱 Filters 🕶	General Miscellaneous		Notes D	irections Allergy	Picture
Client/Organization 🔷 (					
Lutheran Marriage Encounter	Client/Organization Suns	et Technologies	Custor	ner has peanut a	allergy.
MQHA I	Address 1600	Third Street			
Microage I	City Nap	es	=		
Microtech Hearing Inst.			- 11 -		
MSUS/PALS I	St/Prov FL	Postal 34102			
NACM	Lonfirm	X			
Naples City Police Department	Detrious the susset in	to the Event Manager?	=		
Naples Dental Assoc.	(E00471 - Sunset Te	hnologies)	_		
Natasha White I	- · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·				
North Naples Dart League	Yes	No			
Opportunity Workshop I	[				
P S S I					
Polaris Industries I					
Professional Development Institu	Event # Event Date	Party Name	Category	Sales Rep	Theme
Robert Hamilton Company	E00457 2/14/2013	Company Luncheon	Social	John Smith	Birthday Party
Rodriguez, Alexander I	E00458 6/25/2013	Sunset Technologies	Business	Kathy Wilson	Meeting
Salassa/Lau Wedding Reception	E00461 8/12/2013	Sunset Technologies	Special Event	John Smith	Birthday Party
Schad Associates I	> E00471 7/2/2013	Craig's Birthday	Special Event	Kathy Wilson	Social 🦉
Softball Tournament					* + 
Solid Rock Church - Womens Re I					
Stephen McKenney - Kathryn Le					
> Sunset Technologies					
USA Cup I					
Warner Electric/Dana Corp.					
Wedding Template I	4				
Wiggins, Goodlette & Davis P.A					
4 IIII +	Contacts Events Guestro	oms Reminders <u>Contact His</u>	tory		1
🐌 Master Accounts			1	🎽 🌮 🗄 🎅 🗳	🔀 🏤 🏚 👺

*Click the* **Select** *button to retrieve the highlighted event* 

Be sure to select Events tab

## **Generating a Billing Statement**

#### What kinds of prints can I generate from Account Manager?

In addition to a Fax Cover Sheet, you can print any number of custom merge letters (if you own the Marketing Tools add-in to the program) and a Billing Statement that will consolidate all events or guestrooms contracts booked by an account onto one statement. These prints are all available by opening Account Manager and clicking the **Prints** button on the **Home** ribbon tab.

## • Fax Cover Sheet

This option allows you to quickly print a fax cover sheet for the current account, including an optional memo section. The client name, contact person, fax number, etc., defaults from the current account, but can be edited on-the-fly, if desired.

### • Merge Documents

If you own the Caterease Marketing Tools Package, this option allows you to print one of your custom merge documents.

*Note:* Since you are in Account Manager, event information will not merge into a document. Therefore, you should only print documents with no merge fields or only merge fields of account information from this area of the program.

### • Billing Statement

If the current account has many events with you, this option allows you to consolidate all of that financial information into one single billing statement.

*Note: The top portion of this print can be edited in your Miscellaneous Print Designer.* 

- 0 <u>- X</u> 🎯 🧮 🌍 💥 ) Caterease Ŧ Home Select Reports Displa tration Help Cut Arial 680 Search For sunset Q 80 X 💠 💠 🖬 Email Navigation Paste Undo B 7 U A Prints Find Settings Close 27 Windows Clipboard Basic Text Editing Navigat General Account Manager 🗴 Fax Cover Sheet... 9 Merge Documents. Main Account Manager Account Manager: Sunset 🜏 Account Manager Billing Statement 🛄 Layouts 🔹 🔡 Settings 🔹 🗔 🕴 📮 🐖 Event Manager Custom: 💭 Views 🕶 🌱 Fi Window Notes Directions Allergy Picture Prospect Manager Client/Organization 1. Contact Manager Client/Organization Sunset Technologies Customer has peanut allerov Lutheran Marriage Encounter Employee Manager MQHA Address 1600 Third Street I Scheduler Microage City Naples Exit Program Microtech Hearing Inst. St/Prov FL Postal 34102 MSUS/PALS Guestrooms Mana. NACM (239) 261-6617 Telephone Naples City Police Department Fax (239) 261-0067 Naples Dental Assoc. Cellular () · Natasha White North Naples Dart League Email Opportunity Workshop PSS Polaris Industries Event # Event Date Party Name Sales Rep Professional Development Institu Category Theme E00457 2/14/2013 Company Luncheon Social John Smith Birthday Party Robert Hamilton Company E00458 6/25/2013 Sunset Technologies Business Kathy Wilson Meeting Rodriguez, Alexander Ŕ Salassa/Lau Wedding Reception E00461 8/12/2013 Sunset Technologies Special Event John Smith **Birthday Party** Main e Craig's Birthday E00471 Special Event Kathy Wilson Social Schad Associates **;** Softball Tournament rools Solid Rock Church - Womens Re -Stephen McKenney - Kathryn Le D Queries USA Cup Warner Electric/Dana Corp 📝 Setup Wedding Template Wiggins, Goodlette & Davis P.A • Contacts Events Guestrooms Reminders Contact History System 訵 4 • Master Accounts 👐 🌮 🤃 🕐 🖋 📓 🏤 🎼 🖉 📮 CAPS NUM S Br

Click **Prints** in Account Manager

## **Generating Reports from Account Manager**

## What kind of reports can I generate from Account Manager?

There are several reports available to you from the Account Manager. All of them are accessible by clicking the **Accounts** button on the **Reports** ribbon tab.

• Account List (Events)

This report lists every account in your database, and all events (excluding those with a status of "Cancelled") associated with those accounts.

• Account List (Guestrooms)

This report lists every account in your database, and all group bookings (excluding those with a status of "Cancelled") associated with those accounts.

- Inactive Accounts (*Not available in the Express version*) This report lists all accounts in your database that have no associated events or group room bookings - that is, all accounts with whom you've never done any business.
- Accounts Origination (Not available in the Express version) This report will list all accounts who were added to your database during the established date range. Note: For a list of all accounts in your database, set a date range of "Less than or equal to" today's date.
- **Total Accounts Receivables** (Not available in the Express version)

This report lists all money owed to you by all accounts, including both event revenue and group room booking revenue (if applicable). Also indicated is how many days past due the money is ("0-30 days," "31-60 days," etc.).



## Posting Payments to an Account (See image on following page.)

## What if a large account wants to pay me for several events at once?

Since this process is more about the account than it is about a specific event, you would post this large payment in Account Manager. A handy tool helps you spread large payments out across any number of events for a customer.

- 1. In Account Manager, retrieve the client you want to post a payment for.
- 2. On the toolbar at the bottom of the Account Manager, click the **Multiple Payments Processing** button

**Result:** The Multiple Payments Processing window displays, listing all events with outstanding balances. Note: As an option, you can also click the **Select** ribbon tab >**Payments** > **Apply Payments**.

3. On the left-hand side of the Multiple Payments Window, enter payment information (Amount, Pay Method, etc.).

*Note:* The payment date will default to the current date, but can be changed if desired. Data-entry tools are available, such as a drop-down calculator to enter payment amount, and quick-pick lists for <u>Pay</u> <u>Method</u> and <u>Credit Card</u>. If credit card information has been stored with the contact person's information, click the **Credit Card Information** button at the top of the window to retrieve.

- 4. Highlight the particular events in the window to which you would like to apply payments. *Note:* If no events are listed in the window, then this client has no balances currently past due. In this case, you can remove the check from the **Past Due Only** checkbox at the lower left of the window to see all events with balances, regardless of due dates.
- 5. Click **Disperse Payment** at the top right of the window to have Caterease automatically disperse your payment amount, or manually enter the desired payment amount for each individual event directly into the <u>Payment</u> column in the grid.

**Note:** Caterease will automatically disperse payment by paying off the first event in total, moving on to the second and repeating until payment funds are depleted. Once all events are paid in full, Caterease will offer to apply any leftover payment amount as a credit to the final event in the list. You can cancel the dispersing by clicking **Cancel** at the bottom of the window.

Note: You must highlight events first (Step 5) before Caterease will automatically disperse payments.

- 6. Respond to message prompts as desired, depending on whether the payment does not meet or exceeds the balance due:
  - If payment amount is less than balance due, a message will appear, indicating the remaining balance due.
  - If payment amount exceeds balance due, a message will appear, offering to apply remaining payment as a credit to the last event selected. If you accept, the remaining payment amount is applied to the last event. If you decline, a message will inform you of the remaining payment amount; however, that remaining amount will not be applied to anything.
- 7. When finished, click **OK**.

**Result:** A confirmation message displays.

8. Click OK again.

Result: The Multiple Payments Processing window closes and your payments are processed.

💿 Multiple Paym	ents Processing										х
🕴 🔄 Credit Card I	nformation					🧉 🍎 Dis	sperse Paym	ent 🕴 📷	Settings •		i 🖬 🖷
Payment Receive	ed		Pa	ayment Allo	cation Schee	dule	Ţ				
Total Paymer	nt Received					Current Recei	ivables			Apply Pay	ments To
Date	6/25/2013		*	Evt/Log #	Date 🔷	Status	Total	Paid	Balance	Payment	Balance
Amount	\$500.00										
For Each App	lied Payment			🖃 Type : E	vent						
Comment			2	E00458	6/25/2013	Definite	830.09	0.00	830.09		\$830.09
Pay Method				E00471	7/2/2013	Definite	3,329.55	0.00	3,329.55		\$3,329.55
Miscellaneou	5		П	E00461	8/12/2013	Definite	2,151.14	200.00	1,951.14		\$1,951.14
Rev Code				3							6,110.78
Catagony			μ								·
Check #								1			
Check Date								1			
Circex Date								1			
								1			
								1			
							6,310.78	200.00	6,110.78	0.00	6,110.78
			_								
Past Due Only										<u>o</u> k	<u>C</u> ancel
Ente	er Payment Deta	ails			Select Ev	vents	Cli	ck Disper	se Payme	nt	

## **Combining Duplicate Accounts**

# *Oops! I entered the same client twice, and each one has events in my program. Can I combine them?* Yes, you can – and the powerful **Combine Accounts** tool will do all the work for you!

- 1. In Account Manager, find the duplicate account which you want to remove from the program.
- 2. Click the Select in the ribbon located at the top of your Caterease screen.
- 3. Choose General > Combine Accounts. *Result:* A confirmation message appears.
- 4. Click **Yes** to confirm. *Result: An account selection window appears.*
- Select an existing account (or add a new one) to which you will reassign all of the events, contact people, and other details of the client you are removing.
   Note: See note in Step 2, shows for kints on security for people.

*Note:* See note in Step 2, above, for hints on searching for records.

- 6. Click **OK**. *Result:* A confirmation message appears.
- Click Yes to confirm.
   *Result:* The information from your first account (selected in Step 2, above) is moved to your second account (selected in Step 6, above) and you are prompted to delete the first account from Step 2.
- 8. Click **Yes** to delete the first account (selected in Step 2, above). *Result: The account is deleted.*

Choose Select > General > Combine Accounts



Select a duplicate account from the list (Diebold Co.)

Click Yes, then select account to combine into

## **Creating a Default Site Location**

### My clients have preferred locations where they always want their parties held.

You can assign a default site location to any or all of your clients in Account Manager, so whenever you book an event for that new client, his or her default site location comes into that new event automatically.

1. In Account Manager, find the account for which you wish to add a default site location.

On the toolbar at the bottom of the Account Manager, click the **Default Site Location** button **Example:** *The Default Site Location window o* 

- Enter the general information, such as name, address, etc., by simply typing into each field and optionally pressing your [Enter] or [Tab] key to move to the next field.
   Note: If the default site location is a commonly used one, or if the client wants to use their address as the default site location, see the tip below for important information on how to avoid repetitive typing.
- 3. Click the **Directions** tab and enter detailed directions to the default site location.
- 4. Click **Close**. *Result: The window closes and your changes are saved.*

**Tip:** If the default site location is a commonly used one, click the **Site Locations Database** button at the top right of the Default Site Location window to select it from your default database. If the location is not yet in the database, you can type its information in the Default Site Location window and click the **Add to Site Locations Database** button to add it for future use. If the client wants to use his address as the default location, click the **Copy from Client** button, also located at the top right of the window.

ıstom: 🔟 Views 🗸 🍟 Filter	rs • General Miscellaneous Notes Directions Allergy Picture
Client/Organization	
Microage	Client/Organization Sunset Technologies Customer has peanut allergy.
Microtech Hearing Inst.	O Default Site Location
MSUS/PALS	i 🗈 E. 🥵 i 🛄 Canicana 🗖
NACM	: 🔍 👩 😚 : 🎲 settings 🗸 🖓
Naples City Police Department	General Site Information
Naples Dental Assoc.	
Natasha White	Name
North Naples Dart League	Address
Opportunity Workshop	City
PSS	St/Prov
Polaris Industries	
Professional Development Instit	ti Telephone ( ) -
Robert Hamilton Company	Fax () ·
Routh, Mara	Fax
Salassa/Lau Wedding Reception	n (239) 261-0067
Schad Associates	(239) 261-0067
Smith, Joan	Category (239) 261-0067
Softball Tournament	Website
Solid Rock Church - Womens R	le vrebsite
Stephen McKenney - Kathryn Le	
Sunset Technologies	- Diections
Taylor, Tom	
USA Cup	
Warner Electric/Dana Corp.	
Wedding Template	
Wiggins, Goodlette & Davis P.A	
Master Accounts	
- moster Accounts	

Click to select a stored site location

## **Unit 14: Customizing the Screen Display**

Topics covered in this unit include:

Customizing Fields in Account Manager Customizing the Event Manager Screen Display Using the Split Screen Display Accessing the Full-Expand Mode Customizing the Sub-Event Screen Display Customizing the Sub-Event Layout Customizing the Event Wizard Display Creating a Custom Layout on the Event Wizard Display

## **Customizing Fields in Account Manager**

## How about if I want to get rid of specific fields?

Get rid of fields, rearrange fields, make up your own fields. With Caterease, you can completely redesign the screens to suit your needs.

## **Removing Fields from the Screen**

- 1. Click your right mouse button over the field name on either the **General** or **Miscellaneous** tab. *Note: Do not right click the fields themselves, but rather on the name of the field.*
- 2. Right-click.
- 3. Select Customize.
  - Result: A pop-up Customize window appears.
- 4. Hold your left mouse button down on any field name and drag it and drop it into the Available Items pane.

**Result:** The field is removed from the screen.

5. Click the **Save Window Settings** button (located at the top of the screen) if you wish to set this as your new default arrangement.



*Note: Refer to the Customization tutorial and corresponding manual for detailed explanations on how to customize your screens in Account Manager.* 

## Customizing the Screen Display in Event Manager

### What if I don't need some of this information on the screen?

Caterease gives you the unique ability to completely redesign your various screen displays throughout the program to suit your particular business needs. Here, we discuss customizing the areas at the top of the Event Manager screen, as well as modifying the tabs on the General display.

### Adding or Removing Client/Organization Information/Financial Details

- 1. Float your mouse pointer over the client information (Client/Organization Information, top left) or financial information (Financials, top right) at the top of the Event Manager screen.
- 2. Click your right mouse button. *Result:* A pop-up window appears, listing optional fields to be displayed in this area of the screen.
- *3.* Click or un-click checkboxes next to any fields. *Result:* Fields with check marks next to them will appear on the Event Manager screen.

			Right-click a	nywhere on	the screen,	in this case th	he Financials area	
🔞 Event Manager: S	Gunset Technologies #	E00458			/		-	= x
			📃 🛄 Layouts	🕴 👪 Go To	6/25/2013	👻 🕴 😼 Sett	ings 🕶 🛛 🖬 🕴 🖽 🛗	₽.
-Client/Organizatio	n Information				als		Set Financial Display	x
Client/Organizat Address Telephone Fax Event Sut	ion Sunset Techno 1600 Third Stre Naples, FL 341( (239) 261-6617 (239) 261-0067	logies et D2		Subto Serv ( Tax Total Cost	ntal Chg Per Guest		<ul> <li>Subtotal</li> <li>Tip</li> <li>Service Charge</li> <li>Taxes</li> <li>Total</li> <li>Paid</li> <li>Balance</li> <li>Cost</li> </ul>	
General Miscella	neous						Profit Cost Per Guest	
Party Name	Sunset Technologies	i		Event #	E00458		Cost Per Guest (Sul	btc
Sales Rep	Kathy Wilson		+	Date	6/25/2013		Show Discount	
Theme	Meeting		•	Status	Definite			•
Category	Business		•	Planned	25	Booked	6/24/2013	-
Booking Contact	Bland, Craig			Actual	45	Revised	6/25/2013 (03:13 pm)	
Site Contact	Bland, Craig 👻			Guaranteed	22			
🤌 Notes								
		特 🕈 🔏 🖬	. 😻 🌮 🖹	<b>8</b>   <b>1</b>   E	· 😻 🔽 🥂	% <u> </u>	r 19 0 e s	<b>7</b>

*Note: Refer to the Customization tutorial and corresponding manual for detailed explanations on how to customize your screens in Event Manager.* 

## Using the Split Screen in Event Manager

### Can I use the incremental search feature in Event Manager, too?

To search for records incrementally, you must first sort them by one of the columns in the grid – as in the split screen available in Account Manager. This same option is available in Event Manager, as well.

#### Showing the Split Screen

- 1. Move your mouse pointer over the "quick-snap" bar along the left-hand side of Event Manager.
- 2. Click the area of the "quick-snap" bar pointing in the direction you want the pane to adjust: i.e., toward the screen display to stretch or open the pane; away from the display to collapse the pane.
- **Result:** The pane will collapse or stretch in the direction the arrows on the button are pointing.
- 3. To return the pane to its original size, click that same button, which will now be pointing in the opposite direction.

**Result:** The pane will return to its original size.

4. Click the **Save Window Settings** button [G] (located at the top of the screen) if you wish to set this as your new default arrangement.

Result: A confirmation message will appear; click Yes and your new arrangement will be saved.

Use the "quick-snap" bar to split the screen

C Event Manager: Naples Dental Assoc. # E00386				- =	х
i i Layouts ▼ i 👪 Go To ▼ 6/25/2013	- 18	😽 Settings 🕶		i - i -	
Custom: 🔲 Views 🗸 🤟 Filters 🗸 — Client/Organization Information		cials			
Event # Event Date Sta Client/Organization Naples Dental Assoc. Address 3131 Tamiami Trai	Sub Ser	ototal v Chg		\$538.50 \$86.16	٩
> E00386 6/7/2013 (Fri) De Naples, FL 34110	Tax	-1		\$37.70	
E00400 6/7/2013 (Fri) De Fax (239) 454-7126	Co	ai st Per Guest		\$12.27	
E00373 6/8/2013 (Sat) De		AT CLOUCH		ULL.	
E00325 6/9/2013 (Sun) De 🗰 Event					
E00369 6/9/2013 (Sun) De					
E00298 6/11/2013 (Tue) Ca General Miscellaneous					
E00442 6/11/2013 (Tue) De					
E00443 6/12/2013 (Wed) De Party Name Naples Dental Assoc.		Event #	E00386		
E00452 6/13/2013 (Thu) De Sales Rep Kathy Wilson	+	Date	6/7/2013 -	Friday	
E00344 6/14/2013 (Fri) De	+	Status	Definite	•	
E00315 6/14/2013 (Fri) De					
E00444 6/16/2013 (Sun) De	*	Planned	60	Booked 6/25/2013 -	
E00448 6/18/2013 (Tue) De Booking Contact Peterson, George	+	Actual		Revised 6/24/2013 (10:1	
E00186 6/19/2013 (Wed) De	-	Guaranteed	54		
E00319 6/21/2013 (Fri) De		oddidiffeed			
E00387 6/21/2013 (Fri) De					_
E00445 6/22/2013 (Sat) De					
E00378 6/23/2013 (Sun) De					
E00257 6/24/2013 (Mon) De					
E00379 6/24/2013 (Mon) Cl					
E00323 6/24/2013 (Mon) De					
E00111 6/25/2013 (Tue) De					
E00458 6/25/2013 (Tue) De					
E00388 6/28/2013 (Fri) De					
E00401 6/28/2013 (Fri) Te					
€00381 6/30/2013 (Sun) Pn ▼					
i 🚧 🛱 🍫 🖬 🖕 i 🥗 🌮 🔃 i 🚳 🔜 i 🍞 💞 💆 🤄	ð % 🔀	🔁 🍰 🗃	0 🛤 📓	1 😻 🖕	

## Accessing the Full-Expand Mode

- 1. To view the entire grid, click the **Display Full Grid** button **III**, located at the top of the window.
- 2. Click the Quick Column Customizing button , located at the top left-hand side of the window (to the left of the Event # column).
  - Result: Any columns with check marks will appear in the grid.
- 3. **[Optional]** Drag column headings left and right in the grid to reposition them, and click the column heading to sort by that detail.
- 4. Click the **Save Current Window Settings** button if you want this to be saved as the default arrangement for your expanded grid.

	-		<u>i II L</u>	ayouts • 🕴 🌇 Go To • 6/2	5/2013 -	🗄 👑 Settin	igs 🕶 🔛 👯	III II -	
istom: 🎾	🛛 Views 👻 🌱 Filt	ers 🔻		I			1		
Event #	Event Date	Status	Party Name	Client/Organization	City	St/Prov	Category	Theme	Sal
E00386	6/7/2013 (Fri)	Definite	Naples Dental Assoc.	Naples Dental Assoc.	Naples	FL	Mobile	Seminar	Kat
00400	6/7/2013 (Fri)	Definite	Wiggins & Assoc.	Wiggins, Goodlette & Davis	Naples	FL	Business	Office Party	Jo
00373	6/8/2013 (Sat)	Definite	Company Luncheon	MSUS/PALS	Ft. Myers	FL	Business	Meeting	Jo
00325	6/9/2013 (Sun)	Definite	Corporate Meeting	Cruises & Vacations, Inc.	Ft. Myers	FL	Business	Meeting	Jo
00369	6/9/2013 (Sun)	Definite	David Ames Meeting	David Ames & Associates	Ft. Myers	FL	Business	Meeting	R
00298	6/11/2013 (Tue)	Cancelled	Greg's Soccer Team	Greg's Soccer Team	Naples	FL	Business	Meeting	Ka
00442	6/11/2013 (Tue)	Definite	Company Luncheon	Robert Hamilton Company	Ft. Myers	FL	Business	Meeting	Ka
00443	6/12/2013 (Wed)	Definite	Womens Retreat	Solid Rock Church - Wome	Naples	FL	Group Sales	Seminar	Jo
00452	6/13/2013 (Thu)	Definite	Corporate Luncheon	American Family Insurance	Ft. Myers	FL	Business	Meeting	Jo
00344	6/14/2013 (Fri)	Definite	Diebold Company	Diebold Company	Ft. Myers	FL	Social	Banquet	Jo
00315	6/14/2013 (Fri)	Definite	Lutheran Marriage Encount	Lutheran Marriage Encount	Naples	FL	Business	Meeting	Jo
00444	6/16/2013 (Sun)	Definite	Polaris Merchandising	Polaris Industries	Naples	FL	Business	Seminar	R
00448	6/18/2013 (Tue)	Definite	Company Dinner	Ducks Unlimited	Ft. Myers	FL	Business	Banquet	R
00186	6/19/2013 (Wed)	Definite	Goetz/Lyons Wedding Rece	Goetz/Lyons Wedding Rece	Naples	FL	Group Sales	Wedding Receptic	R
00319	6/21/2013 (Fri)	Definite	Company Luncheon	Gustave A. Larson Company	Captiva	FL	Business	Meeting	R
00387	6/21/2013 (Fri)	Definite	Naples Dental Assoc.	Naples Dental Assoc.	Naples	FL	Mobile	Seminar	K
00445	6/22/2013 (Sat)	Definite	Company Luncheon	NACM	Ft. Myers	FL	Business	Meeting	Jo
00378	6/23/2013 (Sun)	Definite	Company Luncheon	Gustave A. Larson Company	Captiva	FL	Business	Meeting	R
00257	6/24/2013 (Mon)	Definite	Company Lunch	Acoustics Associates	Ft. Myers	FL	Social	Banquet	Jo
00379	6/24/2013 (Mon)	Closed	Company Meeting	Gustave A. Larson Company	Captiva	FL	Business	Meeting	R
E00323	6/24/2013 (Mon)	Definite	PSS	PSS	Naples	FL	Business	Meeting	Ka
E00111	6/25/2013 (Tue)	Definite	Crow Wedding Reception	Crow Wedding Reception	Sanibel	FL	Group Sales	Wedding Receptic	Jo
00458	6/25/2013 (Tue)	Definite	Sunset Technologies	Sunset Technologies	Naples	FL	Business	Meeting	Ka
00388	6/28/2013 (Fri)	Definite	Naples Dental Assoc.	Naples Dental Assoc.	Naples	FL	Mobile	Seminar	Ka
00401	6/28/2013 (Fri)	Tentative	Wiggins & Assoc.	Wiggins, Goodlette & Davis	Naples	FL	Business	Office Party	Jo
00381	6/30/2013 (Sun)	Prospective	Prof Kingsfield's Retiremen	EGCU	Ft Myers	FI	Industrial	Retirement	In
### Customizing the Sub-Event Screen Display in Event Manager

#### How do I make the Sub-Event window more applicable to my company?

Out of all the windows in Caterease, the Sub-Event window is the one you are most likely to customize, since it contains certain information that may not apply to your business. You may want to remove the site location details if you don't do off-premise parties, for example, or remove the room information if you do not have banquet rooms.

#### Adding/Removing Fields from the Screen

- 1. Click anywhere in the pane on the left-hand side of the Sub-Event window.
- 2. Select Field Chooser. *Result:* A small Customization window opens.
- 3. To add fields, hold your left mouse button down on any field name in the Customization window and drag it to the Sub-Event details window (just above the Customization window).
- 4. Hold your left mouse button down and drag items up or down to reposition them on the screen.
- 5. If you want this to be the new default look for the program, click the **Save Window Settings** button

Event Manager: Sunset Technologi	es # E004	1					-	= x				
		📜 Layouts 🕶 🗄 🐻 Go To 👻 6/25	5/2013 🛛 🚽 🚼	😽 Settings 🕶	<b>1</b>	≡ ₽ .						
-Client/Organization Information			incials-									
Client/Organization Sunset Tech	hnologie	م Su	ubtotal			2	\$2,755	5.00 🔍				
Address 1600 Third	Street	Se	erv Chg				\$436	5.80				
Naples, FL	34102	Ta	ах	\$								
Telephone (239) 261-6	617	Та	otal			2	3,329	9.55				
Fax (239) 261-0	Fax         (239) 261-0067         Cost Per Guest         \$33											
Event Sub-Event Closed & Allergy												
Description Lunch Buffet	et	Item Name		Price	Qty	Total						
Date 7/2/2013 (Tue)	<b>_</b>	Chef's Table Buffet		\$10.95	100	1.095.00	14	-				
Start 12:00 PM		Soft Drinks		\$1.95	100	195.00	₽	Ē				
End 04:00 PM		Chocolate Cake		\$5.95	100	595.00	I۳					
🔉 Setup Style Banquet 🔺		Wood Grain Podium		\$25.00	1	25.00	R	39				
Room Sand-Sun		Chocolate Cake		\$5.95	100	595.00	IW	国				
Customization *	<u> </u>											
Rows	•											
Actual	<b>_</b>											
Adults	7							4				
Arrival	++											
Bar 🔳												
Booked												
Children												
Delivery Delivery Person												
Departure												
Guaranteed								85				
Guests								_				
Header								†⊞				
NA	_ \							+===				
Planned		ood/Service Staffing Comments										
	: 4/4		🗖 🦚 er 🕅			-						
	- <del>71</del>	T 🗸 🗋 📑 🗶 🗶 👘 🕄 🚺	V % K		6	i 🕼 🗧						

Sub-Event Details pane

### **Customizing the Sub-Event Screen Layout**

1. Open the Sub-Event display by double-clicking inside the Sub-Event Details pane. Alternatively, you

may click the View/Edit Current Sub-Event button

- 2. Right-click anywhere on the Sub-Event window.
- 3. To remove a tab from the window, right click on the tab you want to remove and click Customize.
- 4. Hold your left mouse button down on the tab and drag and drop that tab into the Available Items pane of the Customize window.

Result: That tab is removed from the Sub-Event window.

5. If you want this to be the new default look for the program, click the **Save Window Settings** button



Note: Because of the endless variations available to you when customizing your screens, this topic is addressed here in very general detail. Refer to the Customization tutorial and corresponding manual for detailed explanations on how to customize your screen display.

### **Customizing the Event Wizard Display**

# Am I able to customize the screen display in the Event Wizard to reflect a particular type of event that I book on a regular basis?

You can create your own custom Event Wizards to be used for any type of event you might book; you can create a custom wizard for off-premise parties, one for deliveries, one for weddings, etc., each showing the specific information that applies to that type of event. You can even create layouts which have certain details conditionally required, depending on what type of event is being booked.



### **Creating a Custom Layout**

- 1. Open the Event Wizard.
- 2. From the Step 1 window, click the **Next** button.
- 3. Click the Layouts button at the top left of the Event Wizard window and choose Custom.

Result: The Custom Layouts window displays.

4. **[Optional]** Click the **Shared** button at the bottom left of the window if you want your new layout to be available to all users on your Caterease network.

5. Click the **Add Layout** button <sup>44</sup>, located at the top left-hand side of the window.

Result: A new line is added to the window with the default name of "New Layout."

*Note:* You can update an existing layout on the list to show your current display by right-clicking the layout name and choosing *Copy From Current*.

6. Type a name of your new layout and click the **Save Current Layout** button

*Note:* If you want to retrieve custom window size and position settings, cutom grid views or custom toolbar settings with your saved layout, select those options first (Layouts > Include) before selecting your custom layout. 7. If you want this to be the new default layout of this window from now on, click the **Save Window Settings** 

button is in this to be the new default look for all users on your network, click the **Settings** button at the top right and choose **Shared** > Window Settings.

8. Click the X at the top right-hand side of the Custom Layout window to close it.

## Accessing an Existing Layout

- Open the Event Wizard.
   Click the down arrow to the right of the Next button.
   Select the desired layout from the drop-down list.

🞯 🖬 🗊 🟦 ) =										
Home	Select Reports Display Adminis	tration	Help							* 🔞
Paste Undo	· 11 · A· ▲· Ⅰ <u>□</u> ▲ ·  = = = = = =	Prints	Search For Navigation	Find	d e	e 🛛 🗙	∲ <> ₽ Win	settings	Close	
Clipboard	Basic Text Editing 🕞	Prints	Naviga	ite		Data		Windows		
No Windows										
Tools «		Step 1:	Select An Account & Conta	ct Person			х			
Kent Wizard		🕴 🧮 Layo	outs •			🕴 😸 Settings	- 🖬			
Current Events		Search Fo	or	a 🕈 🗖 🕯	1 🗐					
😔 Accounts Receivable		* Client/0	Organization 🔺	City	St/Prov	Telephone	-			
active Reminders		> 🗄 Acm	ne Corporation	Naples	FL	(239) 261-6617				
of Client Contacts		± Aco	ustics Associates	Ft. Myers	FL	(612) 544-8901				
💀 Contacts Made		± Aid	Association for Lutherans	Ft. Myers	FL	(612) 535-7220				
🌒 Web Order Manager		± Ame	erican Family Insurance	Ft. Myers	FL	(612) 420-9242				
💯 Shift Manager		± Bass	Inc.	Ft. Myers	FL	(612) 272-9530				
-			//USON Company	Naples The Marine	FL	(612) 208-3060				
			ier County Bank	Pt. Myers Naples	FL	(012) 340-0234				
		E Croy	w Wedding Reception	Sanibel	FI	(239) 472-0011				
		⊕ Crui	ses & Vacations, Inc.	Ft. Myers	FL	(612) 835-5575				
		± Davi	id Ames & Associates	Ft. Myers	FL	(612) 595-8970				
		🗄 Dieb	old Co.	Ft. Myers	FL	(612) 378-4000				
		± Dieb	old Company	Ft. Myers	FL	(612) 378-4000				
		🗄 Duc	ks Unlimited	Ft. Myers	FL	(612) 645-6446				
		🛨 Dvo	rak Reception	Naples	FL	(612) 437-0783				
		⊕ East	High School	Naples	FL	(218) 863-2911				
		Ever	blades Hockey	Naples	FL	(612) 741-6658				
Main			C.U.	Ft. Myers	FL	(239) 590-6653	_			
		Gles	sing Wedding	Naples	FL	(612) 541-0444	_			
Tools			tz/Lyons Wedding Reception	Naples	FL	(612) 578-08/3				
		+ Gree	i's Soccer Team	Naples	FI	(507) 253-1869				
Queries		144 44 4	<b>&gt; &gt;&gt; &gt;&gt; +&gt; +&gt; + + +</b>			(	, <b>*</b>			
L					<b>_</b>					
Setup		🧳 Get I	More Help		Ne	D	elivery			
System	istrator					T. O W	abbed Vie nsite (edding	2W	CAPS	NUM SCRL INS 4
					_					

## **Unit 15: Event Manager Tools**

Topics covered in this unit include:

Viewing/Editing an Event Checklist Viewing/Editing an Event Timeline Viewing/Modifying Event Tax Rates Viewing Driving Directions Adding Payments Scheduling Deposits Viewing Event Status History Viewing Related Events Establishing a List of Required Items Viewing/Adding Event-Related Files Applying Discount Rates Managing Multiple Events Simultaneously Copying an Event Switching/Editing Account Information



Click the Select ribbon tab and the General button to access certain event-specific tools

*Most event tools are accessible through the Event Manager toolbar* 

### The Event Manager Toolbar

At the bottom of your Event Manager screen is a toolbar with various event-specific features, such as the Event Checklist, Payments, Deposits, etc. More features (Copy Event, Costing Summary, etc.), are available through the **Tools** > **Select** > **General** menu at the top of the Caterease screen.

Many of these tools are discussed in detail on the following pages.

### **Using the Event Checklist**

#### What is an Event Checklist?

A checklist is much like a to-do list for your event: a list of tasks that need to be performed in relation to the event.

- 1. Click the **Event Checklist** button 🔽, located on the lower right-hand side of the Event Manager screen. *Result: The Event Checklist window displays.*
- 2. To add a new checklist to an event, click the Add A New Checklist Item button , located on the right-hand side of the Event Checklist window.
- 3. Type the checklist item into the <u>Checklist Item</u> field.
- 4. Enter a due date for the checklist item by clicking the down arrow to the right of the <u>Due</u> field to access a drop-down calendar.
- 5. Select the person who is responsible for completing the item by clicking the down arrow to the right of the <u>Assigned To</u> field and choosing a name from the quick-pick list.
- 6. [**Optional**] To add notes related to the checklist item, click the **Show Checklist Item Notes** button in the text block which displays, type notes as desired.
- 7. When an item has been completed, click the corresponding checkbox in the Is Done column.

#### **Retrieving Items from Default Checklist**

- 1. From the Event Checklist window, click the **View or Select from Default Checklists** button 🖳 .
- 2. To add an existing checklist to a particular event, click the desired default checklist category from the left-hand pane of the window to select it.
- 3. From the right-hand pane, highlight one or more checklist items.
- 4. Click OK.
- 5. Click in the <u>Due</u> field and type a due date or click the down arrow to the right of the field to access the drop-down calendar.
- 6. Click the <u>Assigned To</u> field and type the name of the person responsible for this item or click the down arrow to choose a name from the corresponding quick-pick list.
- 7. When an item has been completed, click the corresponding checkbox in the Is Done column.

Click the Quick-Column Customizing button to add columns

				😸 Settings 🕶	-
Checklist Item	Due	Assigned To	4	Done On	
Get Signed Contract from Client	7/14/2013	Jo Ann Mulnix	V	7/14/2013	
Get Initial Deposit	7/15/2013	Jo Ann Mulnix	V	7/15/2013	
Call For Final Guest Count	8/23/2013	Jo Ann Mulnix			-
Linen Bag to Laundry	8/29/2013	Roxanne M. Me			1
Wash/Sanitize Silverware	8/29/2013	Chad Nelson			Ţ
Put Away Chairs	8/29/2013	Chad Nelson			
Cut Fruit	8/29/2013	Chad Nelson			t
Make mixers	8/29/2013	Chad Nelson			E
					8

### **Using the Event Timeline**

Date 8/29/2013 8/29/2013 8/29/2013 8/29/2013 8/29/2013	Time 05:00 PM 05:00 PM	Timeline Item Bar Opens	Category Front of House
Date 8/29/2013 8/29/2013 8/29/2013 8/29/2013	Time           05:00 PM           05:00 PM	Timeline Item Bar Opens	Category Front of House
8/29/2013 8/29/2013 8/29/2013	05:00 PM 05:00 PM	Bar Opens	Front of House
8/29/2013 8/29/2013	05:00 PM		
8/29/2013		Guests Arrive	Customer
9 /20 /2012	06:00 PM	Best Man Toast	Customer
8/29/2015	06:30 PM	First Dance	Customer
8/29/2013	06:45 PM	Father/Daughter Dance	Customer
8/29/2013	07:30 PM	Cake Cutting	Customer

In addition to the various time fields available in Event Manager, you can also create a detailed timeline unique to each party.

- 1. Click the **Event Timeline** button , located on the lower right-hand side of the Event Manager screen. *Result: The Event Timeline window displays.*
- 2. To add a new timeline to an event, click the **Add a New Timeline** button , located on the right-hand side of the Event Timeline window.

**Result:** A new field displays (today's date auto-populates, by default).

- 3. Type the time the timeline item is due into the <u>Timeline</u> field. Alternatively, you may use the up-and-down arrows to select a time.
- 4. Type a description of the timeline item into the <u>Timeline Item</u> field.
- 5. Select a Category (Front of House, Back of House, etc.), by clicking the drop-down list to the right of the <u>Category</u> field to indicate who is responsible for completing the timeline item.
- 6. [**Optiona**l] To add notes related to the timeline item, click the **Show Timeline Item Notes** button . In the text block which displays, type notes as desired.

#### Viewing a Default Event Timeline

- 1. From the Event Timeline window, click the **View or Select from Default Timeline** button , located at the top right-hand side of the window.
- 2. To add an existing timeline item to a particular event, click the desired timeline category from the lefthand pane of the window to select.
- 3. From the right-hand pane, highlight one or more timeline items.
- 4. Click OK.
- 5. Click in the <u>Time</u> field for a particular item and enter a time, or use the up-and-down arrows to adjust.
- 6. [**Optiona**] Enter a Category to use for tracking of this item, or click the down arrow to choose a name from the corresponding quick-pick list.

### Displaying Event Tax/Service Charge Rates (See image on the following page)

#### Do I have to set a tax schedule every time I book an order?

Remember our rule of thumb: You should never have to type the same thing more than once. Your Caterease program has a default tax and service charge rate that you can create for all new orders (described later in this manual). This page addresses adjustments to the tax/service charge rates of one particular order.

#### **Editing Tax/Service Charge Rates on-the-fly**

- 1. In Event Manager, click the View/Edit Event Tax/Service Charge Rates button <sup>76</sup>, located at the lower right-hand side of the screen.
- 2. Click in any field and edit as desired, typing rates or using the up-and-down arrows to increase or decrease the rate one percentage point, respectively.
- 3. Press your **[Enter]** key to move from field to field.

#### **Applying Tax on Service Charge**

- 1. Click in the checkbox labeled <u>Tax Serv Chg</u>, above the far right-hand column.
- 2. If the tax rates are different for the tax on Service Charge, click the **At New Rate** checkbox. Then click in any rate field below and edit as desired.
- 3. Press your [Enter] key to move from field to field.

#### Making the Order Tax Exempt

- 1. Click in the checkbox labeled <u>Tax Exempt</u> at the lower left of the form.
- 2. Click in the Exempt # field and enter an optional tax exempt ID number.
- 3. Enter an optional expiration date for the tax exemption.

#### **Adding Additional Adjustments**

- 1. Click in one of the fields at the lower right of the form.
- 2. Enter a dollar amount to be added to the subtotal, first, second, third tax, gratuity, or service charge of the order.

#### **Retrieving an Optional Tax Schedule**

- 1. Click the **Select Tax Schedule** button.
- 2. Select a schedule from the list.
- 3. Click the **OK** button.



Make an order Tax Exempt with one mouse click

### **Getting Driving Directions**

#### Can I quickly get up-to-date driving directions to the site location of an event?

Caterease has a dynamic interface with the leading mapping websites – MapQuest, Google Maps, and Virtual Earth – so you can simply click a button and get up-to-the-minute driving directions.

#### Using the Mapping Interface

- Click the Get Map button on the toolbar at the bottom of the Event Manager window.
   *Result:* The Get Directions window displays, with your company's address automatically filled in as the Start information, and your client's address as the End information.
   *Note:* If you have not filled in this account's address, city, state, etc., then the End information will be blank.
- 2. Click the down arrow next to <u>Map Provider</u> in the <u>Options</u> section and choose your preferred mapping website.
- 3. Click OK.

**Result:** Your web browser will open on your chosen website showing directions to the client's address. **Note:** This interface only works if you have a connection to the Internet currently active on your computer.

🙆 Event Manager: Crow W	edding Recepti	ion # E00111 (Li	nked to Log # R00003)	- = x
-Client/Organization Infor	Get Direction	15	X	🔁 Settings 🔹 📮 🕴 💂
Client/Organization		START		\$11,695.00 🔍
Address	DIRECTIONS	Address	1020 Goodlette Rd N	\$1,811.20 \$797.65
Telephone Fax	DIRECTIONS	City	Naples	\$14,303.85 \$45.08
	-	St/Prov Postal	FL 34102	
Event Sub-Event	-	Country		Closed
General Miscellaneous	-			
🔆 Miscellaneous Field		END		formation
Business Type Full Serv		Address	6460 Sanibel Captiva Rd -	
Operation Riversid	e	St/Prov	FL	
Reference Weddin	¢	Postal	33957	Portal
Pay Method Credit C		Country		Postal
		Options		
🤌 Notes	-	Map Provider	Google Maps	
Set tables five feet ap				
			<u>QK</u> <u>Cancel</u>	
/		特 🖻 🖧 🖬	3 📑 🌿 🌮 🔍 🗄 🎦 🔛 🗄 🎔 😻 💆 %	2 = 6 7 6 2 .
Click to select the	man nrovid	er		
enen io select inc			Cl	ick to get directions

### **Posting Payments to an Event**

#### **Adding a Payment**

- 1. Click the **Event Payments** button , located at the bottom of the Event Manager screen. *Result: The Event Payments window displays.*
- 2. Click the Add Payment button *click*, located at the top of the Event Payments form.
- 3. Enter an <u>Amount</u> for the payment.
- 4. Enter additional information (Pay Method, Comment, Credit Card Information) as desired.
- 5. Click the **OK** button to close the Payment Details form.

#### Viewing or Editing Payment Details

- 1. Select any payment listed on the Event Payments form.
- 2. Click the View/Edit Payment Details button.
- 3. Edit the information as desired.
- 4. Click the **OK** button to close the Payment Details form.

Event Manager: Sunset Technologies # E00471	- = x
	🕴 🧮 Layouts 🔹 🗄 Go To 🔹 6/25/2013 💿 🕴 🚟 Settings 🔹 🏹 🗄 🚝 🚑
-Client/Organization Information	
Client/Organ Address	1) Payment Details x \$2,755.00 \$3436.80 \$137.75
Telephone	Credit Card Information - \$3,329.55
Fax	General \$33.34
Event 🔐	Date 5/25/2013 • ed 💉 Allergy
General Misco Paid Amount Comment	Amount 500.00
Party Name	Pay Method Credit Card
Sales Rep	Category 🔹 Jesday
P Theme	Comment Initial Deposit
Category	Miccellaneour
Booking Cont	9:58 am)
Site Contact	Rev Code
	Acct Code
🦉 Notes	Check # 123
Craig is the m	Check Date 6/25/2013 •
	<u>Q</u> K <u>C</u> ancel
₩   1 of 1	▶
t.	
● 🖕 🖬 🗞 🗮 🖗 [	* 🌮 🔃 🔝 🔛 !: 🗅 🌾 🖻 🛠 % 🛛 🔛 🖧 🗃 🚱 🛤 😹 隊

### Scheduling Future Deposits for an Event

#### Can I set up a schedule of deposits the customer will pay in the future?

Yes! You have two options: You can either add as many future deposits as you need separately, entering due dates and amounts for each one, or you can create a default schedule of deposits and have Caterease automatically assign dates and amounts based on a custom set of rules you establish.

#### **Scheduling Deposits Manually**

- In Event Manager, click on the Event Deposits Due button , located on the bottom right-hand side of the Event Manager display. *Result: The Event Deposits window opens.*
- 2. Click the Add Deposit button , located at the top of the Event Deposits form. *Result:* A new, blank line is added to your deposits list.
- 3. Click the down arrow at the right of the <u>Due Date</u> field and select a due date for the new deposit using the drop-down calendar.
  - Note: Of course, you can optionally type the date by hand.
- *4.* Press your **[Enter]** key. *Result:* Your cursor moves to the next field the <u>Due Amount field</u>.
- 5. Enter an amount for the deposit, or click the down arrow to get help from the drop-down calculator.
- Press [Enter] and enter a <u>Comment</u>, if desired. Note: Examples of comments might include "Initial Deposit," "Final Payment," etc.
- 7. Repeat Steps 2-6 to add other deposits as desired.
- 8. Click the X at the top right of the window when finished. *Result:* A confirmation message appears.
- 9. Click **Yes**. *Result:* The Event Deposits window closes, saving your changes.

Event Manage	r: Greg's Soccer Tea	am # E00002						- = ×
			💻 Layouts -	Go To - 6	/27/2012 -	🕴 😽 Settings 🕶	-	ЩЩ <b>Д</b> ,
Client/Organiza	tion Information		6	Financials				
Client/Organ Address	Event Deposits	: Greg's Soccer Tea	m (E00002)				×	\$2,004.00 \$320.64
<b>.</b>	🌙 Print				$\backslash$	🚦 😽 Settings 🕶		\$140,28
Fax	Next Deposit	\$732.46 -			Total Paid	\$2,464.92 \$2,464.92	2	\$43.92
🔛 Event 🔐	Due Date	6/15/2012 -			Balance	\$0.00		/
General Mar	Due Date 🔺	Due Amt	Comment	Paid Pa	ay Date	Pay Amt	1	
General Wilso	6/1/2012	\$1,232.46	50% of Total Balance		6/27/2012	\$1,232.46	<b>-</b>	
Party Name	6/8/2012	\$500.00	Fixed Amount		6/27/2012	\$500.00	<u> </u>	
Sales Pen	6/15/2012	\$732.46	100% of Remaining Balance	7	6/27/2012	\$732.46	2	urday
Sales Kep							1	
Theme								<b>•</b>
Category								-
							1	(45 am)
Booking Cont							1	.:45 am)
Site Contact								
🤌 Notes								
Set up the ro								
	H4 44 4 3 of 3	* * * *	•			▶		

### Adding Scheduled Deposits to an Event

The steps below describe how you can instantly create a detailed schedule of future deposits due for any event, based on the default schedule you created above.

1. In Event Manager, click on the **Event Deposits Due** button , located at the bottom right of the Event Manager display.

Result: The Event Deposits window appears.

2. Click the **Make Scheduled Deposits** button at the top of the Event Deposits window. *Result:* A list of deposits is created, based on the deposits schedule you have created in your program.

Event Deposits	: Ladtech (E00336)					x
ᢖ Print						😼 Settings 🕶 🗔
Next Deposit	\$1,000.00 -				Total	\$1,081.78
Due Date	7/30/2012 -				Balance	\$396.68
Due Date	Duc Amt	Commont	<b>▲</b> ····· <b>▲</b>	Daid Da	v Data	Day Amt 🗬
7/30/2012	\$1,000.00	Comment			y Date	Pay Ant
H4 44 4 1 of 1	▶ ₩ <b>*</b> '*	4				
				/		

#### Click to add new deposif schedule

### **Checking Event Status History**

#### Can I track how long an event has been Tentative, Prospective, etc.?

Quickly track the lifecycle of an event using the handy Event Status History tool. This feature shows specifically how much time an event has spent at each level of your sales process (from Prospective, to Tentative, to Definite) or any custom status in-between.

#### Checking the Status History of an Event

- 1. Open an event in Event Manager.
- 2. Click the **Event Status History** button *from the toolbar at the bottom of the Event Manager screen.*
- 3. **[Optional]** Click the **Print Grid** button <sup>11</sup>/<sub>20</sub> to print the grid.

				Pr	i <b>nt Grid</b> but	ton			
					\				
🔞 Ev	vent Manager: S	unset Techno	ologies # E00479						- = x
-	_		-	1.1	t Lougette a 🤅	Go Tor 6	- 2012 -	: De Cattings -	
cr.		11 1		1.1			27/2012 +	: 🞲 Settings •	
-Cli	ent/Organization	n Information	1		<u>q</u>	Hnancials			<u>_</u>
· · ·	Client/Organizati	ion Sunse	t Technologies			Subtotal			\$0.00
· · ·	Address	Naple	s FL 34102			Tay			\$0.00
	Telephone	(239) 2	261-6617			Total			\$0.00
	Fax	(239) 2	261-0067			Cost Per	uest		\$0.00
				-		••• ▲	$\backslash$		
<b>F</b>	🛛 Event 🛛 🖶 Sub	-Event					$\mathbf{X}$		
Ge	eneral Miscellar	neous	Event Status Hist	tory				x	
	De etc. Maria	Course to all	* Status	Date	User	Sales Rep	Days On .		
	Party Name	sunset Tech	> Cancelled	6/27/2012 1:07:49	P Administrator	John Smith	0.57 Hours		
S	Sales Rep	John Smith	L						Wednesday
P T	Theme						<u>}</u>		
0	Category							Brad 6/27/2	0012
-								ked 0/2//2	
E	Booking Contact	Bland, Craig						sed 6/21/2	2012 (01:07 pm)
🖹 s	Site Contact	Bland, Craig							
1	Notes								
Cu	ustomer has pe	anut allerov	()						
			: <del>*1</del>	👼 🖧 🖬 🚦 🔮	¥ 🌮 🛛 🔃	🔝 🛛 🔜 🗄 📭	s 📑 😵 🔁 🛛	% 🔀 📑 🔒	o 🗃 🥝 💣 🎏 🛓
									K

Event Status History button

### **Viewing Related Events**

#### How do I find other events like this one?

The Related Events tool – available only in the Professional version of Caterease, is an excellent way to quickly navigate through your events. Find parties related to each other, based on client name, sales rep, theme, or a variety of other options, and jump to them instantly, or even open them in a separate Event Manager!

#### Using the Related Events Tool

- 1. Open an event in Event Manager.
- Click the Related Events button in the toolbar at the bottom of Event Manager. Note: You may also click Select > General > Related Events. Results: A pop-up window appears, listing all events related to this one by a certain detail.
- [Optional] Click the down arrow next to <u>Relate By</u> and choose to see events related by a different detail. *Note: This window retains its settings, and thus shows the last detail you chose in the Relate By field.*
- 4. **[Optional]** Float your mouse over any column heading and click the down arrow at the right of the column heading to filter events. (e.g., filter Event Date to show only related events for "This Week"). *Note: This window retains its settings, and thus shows the last filter you used.*
- 5. **[Optional]** Open a related event in any of the following ways:
  - Double-click an event.
  - Select an event and click the **Select** button at the top left of the window.
  - Right-click an event and opt to open it in the current Event Manager or a second Event Manager.

0	Event Manage	r: Sunset Techn	ologies # E00471							- = x
					🕴 🛄 Layouts 🕶 🕴 🚟	Go To 🔻 6/	26/2013 -	😼 Settings 🕶		: # = + -
•	-Client/Organiza	tion Informatio	n			Financials				
	Client/Organi Address	ization Suns 1600	et Technologies Third Street		٩	Subtotal Serv Chg				\$2,755.00 \$436.80
	Telephone	Related Events	s: Client = Sunset Te	chnologies					x	\$3,329.55
	Fax	A Select Re	elate By Client/Organ	nization	<b>*</b>					\$33.34
		Event #	Event Date	Status	Client/Organization		Sales Rep	Total	iii	
	Event Event	> 🛨 E00457	2/14/2013	Definite	Sunset Technologies		John Smith	1,722.00	₽	ed 🗶 Allergy
	General Misc	± E00458	6/25/2013	Definite	Sunset Technologies		Kathy Wilson	830.09	₩.	
	ocherar Wilser	+ E00461	8/12/2013	Definite	Sunset Technologies		John Smith	2,151.14		
	Party Name	+ E00471	7/2/2013	Definite	Sunset Technologies		Kathy Wilson	3,329.55		
	Sales Rep									uesday
	Theme									
	inenie a i									
	Category									-
	Booking Cont									9:58 am)
۲	Site Contact									
	5.00 000000									
	🤌 Notes									
	Craig is the m									
		Cated						9,022,70		
		Chi: 4						0,052.70		
		1 of	4 • • •	•				•		
										0
			・ 特 贡 ノ	🖗 🖬 🖕 🗄	🏼 🔝 🕄	1 🗄 🎅 🐳	🛛 🖉 % 👔	2 🖻 🔥 🛐		💓 🗟 📮

### **Using Required Items**

#### What is a Required Items List?

A Required Items List is a compilation of items that are to be included when you order a particular menu item. Setting up a Required Items List allows you to create a checklist of items that must accompany specific bookings.

- 1. Click the **Required Items** button **i** in the toolbar at the bottom of Event Manager.
- 2. Click the **Select Items** button  $\square$ , located on the upper right-hand side of the window.
- 3. Click a title in the left-hand pane to choose a specific list of required items.
- 4. Retrieve items in any of the following ways:
- Double-click a single item to retrieve it.
- Drag your mouse over several items to select them all, or hold the [Shift] or [Ctrl] key down on your keyboard as you click.
- Drag and drop highlighted items from the Select Items window.
- Click the **Drop Items** button at the top left-hand side of the window to retrieve the currently highlighted item(s) and leave the window open.
- 5. Click the **OK** button at the bottom right-hand side of the window to retrieve the currently highlighted item(s) and close the window.
- 6. [Optional] Click the Quick Column Customizing button and choose to display additional columns.

Print      ustom      Views      Y     Fil Description      Quart Chafing Dish	ters • Category	Default Qty	Linked	F5 01-			i 😼 Settin	ngs ▼
ustom 🕅 Views 🔻 🤎 Fil Description 8 Quart Chafing Dish	ters <del>•</del> Category	Default Qty	Linked	FC 01.				
Description 8 Quart Chafing Dish	Category	Default Qty	Linked	FC 01-				
8 Quart Chafing Dish				FS-Qty	Qty	Associated Food/Service Item	Vendor	Ę
8 Quart Chafing Dish		Click	k here to d	efine a filter				E
<u> </u>	Equipment	0.04	V	100	5	Chef's Table Buffet		*
Dinner Plate	Tableware	1	7	100	100	Chef's Table Buffet		
Napkin	Linen	1	7	100	100	Chef's Table Buffet		
Silverware Set	Tableware	1	V	100	100	Chef's Table Buffet		

### **Using Event-Related Files**

#### Am I able to associate contracts, prints, proposals, etc., with a particular event?

If you have any computer files (Word documents, Excel spreadsheets, PDF's, images), that are somehow related to an event, you can associate those files to the party in Event Manager. For example, perhaps you want to maintain a copy of each updated contract on record, in order to compare changes over time. Or maybe you want to create a diagram of the party in an image software program and then attach that image as a JPG or BMP file. You can choose to embed a copy of each file into the Caterease database or, if you plan to make future changes to the file, you can establish a link to the file itself.

- 1. Click the **Event-Related Files** button *k*, located at the bottom right-hand side of the Event Manager window.
- 2. Click the **Add File** button on the right-hand side of the Event-Related Files window.
- 3. Choose to embed the existing file into the database or establish a link to the existing file. *Note:* Embedding the file into the database copies the file in its current form and attaches it to the event, whereas establishing a link to a file will connect this event to a file on your computer or network that you may save over time. (When establishing a link to a file that is not saved on your computer, you will only be able to review that file when your computer has access to it.)
- 4. Click **Yes** to confirm your choice. *Result: The Attach File window opens*.
- 5. Browse to the desired file and double-click. Alternatively, you may locate the document from the File name drop-down list and click **Open**.

**Result:** The document name displays in the Event Related Files window.

- 6. Click the Save Attached File button to save the file to the event.
- 7. **[Optional]** Enter a <u>Comment</u> to describe the file or its relationship to the event.

Event Related Files:	E00184			x
Loaded 🔍 🔻	File Name	Linked	Comment	<b>6</b>
6/26/2013 10:01:32 A	Salassa_Lau_Proposal	.docx		-
				¥
				Ã
				ñ
				**
				щ,
14 4 4 <b>1</b> 51 1				
10f1	P PH 4			

### **Applying Event Discount Rates**

#### What are discount rates?

Discount rates are a means for you to discount an event by a certain percentage of the menu prices. You can break a discount into different rates for each menu item type: Food, Beverages, Liquor, etc.

#### **Applying Discounts**

- 1. In Event Manager, click the **Select** ribbon tab and click the **General** button.
- 2. Select Event Discounts.
- 3. Click in any field and enter a discount rate, either by typing into the field or using the up and down arrows to raise or lower the rate one percentage point, respectively.
- 4. Press your **[Enter]** key to move from field to field.
- 5. Repeat for any menu item type.
- 6. Click **Close** when finished.



### **Managing Multiple Events Simultaneously**

#### What if I get interrupted when I'm working on an event?

Then handle the interruption, without ever closing the event! Caterease lets you open multiple windows – including multiple Event Managers – simultaneously, so you can handle any interruption without losing your place!

#### **Opening Multiple Managers**

- 1. With one Event Manager (or other Manager) open, click the **Event Manager** button (or other Manager button) on the **Main** sidebar.
- 2. Click **Yes** to confirm your choice.
- 3. Work as desired in the new Manager.
- 4. Close the second Manager to return to your previous Manager (or toggle between the two).

💿 🥶 🎝 🐮 =					с	aterease						- • • ×
Home	Select Repo	orts Dis	play Administra	ition Help								* 🕐
Paste Undo Clipboard	I <u>U</u> A~ Basic T	rext Editing	11 • A· A· = = 0= 0= 0=	Prints Email Print/Email	Search For Navigation	I II III IIII	•• •	Find	Data	Image: Constraint of the second s	Settings	Close
Event Manager Event Ma	anager 🗙											×
Main «	¢	Event N	lanager: Salassa/Lau	I Wedding Receptio	on # E00184	🕴 🛄 Layouts 🕶	i 📆 Go	To <b>▼</b> 6/26/20	13 🗸 🗄 🛃	🖇 Settings 🔹 🗔		×
Prospect Manager		-Client/O	rganization Informat	ion			— -Fina	ncials				
🗑 Contact Manager 🕃 Employee Manager		Client/ Addres	Organization Sal ss 360 Ft.	assa/Lau Wedding 10 Plymouth Rd. Myers, FL 55305	Reception		م Su Se Ta	ubtotal erv Chg ax			\$6,904.50 \$1,104.72 \$483.32	•
🖽 Scheduler		Tele Fax	Event Manager: N	Naples Dental Asso	c. # E00388							- = x
📳 Exit Program						: 11	Layouts 🕶	🗄 👪 Go To	• 6/26/2013	👻 🕴 😸 Setting	s 🕶 🗖 🖬 🕸	
Guestrooms Mana		Eve	-Client/Organizatio	n Information				— -Financia	als			
		Gener Party Sales	Client/Organizat Address Telephone Fax	ion Naples Den 3131 Tamiar Naples, FL 3 (239) 888-43 (239) 454-71	tal Assoc. ni Trai 4110 21 26			Subto Serv ( Tax Total Cost	otal Chg Per Guest			\$663.50 \$106.16 \$46.45 \$816.11 \$11.04 ≡
		Them Cate Book	Event Sub	b-Event neous				······				Closed
	Þ	Site (	Party Name	Naples Dental Ass	oc.			Event #	E00388			
		<u> </u>	Sales Rep	Kathy Wilson			-	Date	6/28/2013	•	Frida	y
Main		/ Not	Theme	Seminar			•	Status	Definite			<b>•</b>
			Category	Mobile			•	Planned	60	Booked 6/2	25/2013	-
Tools			Booking Contact	Peterson, George			*	Actual	60	Revised 6/2	24/2013 (10:16	am)
Queries		Þ	Site Contact	Peterson, George			*	Guaranteed	54			
System			🤌 Notes									
🔎 Browse 🛛 🍟 Admin	istrator								Event	t Manager	CAPS N	JM SCRL INS

### Copying an Event (See image on following page)

#### What does Copy Event actually do?

When you copy an event, it takes all details of that event (with the exception, of course, of payment information) and copies them to another date or dates. If a customer wants to repeat an event - or even make the event weekly, monthly, etc. - it can be accomplished in just a couple of mouse clicks.

#### **Copying an Event to Specific Dates**

- 1. In Event Manager, select the **Select** tab then the **General** icon **w** and then choose **Copy Event**.
- 2. Enter a date into the first field on the **Specific Dates** tab, or click the down arrow to get assistance from the drop-down calendar.
- 3. Enter more dates as desired.
- 4. At the bottom left of the Copy Event form, click any of the various checkboxes if you wish to include food/service items, staffing, auto-reminders or room diagrams in your copy, or if you want to use updated menu prices and costs.
- 5. Click **OK**.

#### Copying an Event for Regular Intervals (Not Available in the Express Version)

- 1. Click the **Optional Parameters** tab.
- 2. Click the down arrow next to the <u>Sequence</u> field.
- 3. Choose a sequence for the copy.
- 4. Select a <u>Beginning Date</u> or day on which the copy should begin.
- 5. Enter the number of copies needed into the <u>Number Of Copies</u> field.
- 6. At the bottom left of the Copy Event form, click any of the various checkboxes if you wish to include food/service items, staffing, auto-reminders or room diagrams in your copy, or if you want to use updated menu prices and costs.
- 7. Click **OK**.

#### Copying an Event for Specific Days Within a Range (Not Available in the Express Version)

- 1. Click the **Within Range** tab.
- 2. Click the checkbox(es) next to the specific day(s) you want your new events to occur on.
- 3. Enter a start date in the From field under Select Range.
- 4. Enter an end date in the <u>To</u> field under Select Range.
- 5. Select Days by clicking into the corresponding check boxes.
- 6. At the bottom left of the Copy Event form, click any of the various checkboxes if you wish to include food/service items, staffing, auto-reminders or room diagrams in your copy, or if you want to use updated menu prices and costs.
- 7. Click **OK**.

💿 Copy Event: Salassa/Lau Wedding Re	eception (E00184) X
E00184 · 7/2/2013 (Tuesday) 🧳 Clear	r 🔶
Specific Dates Optional Parameters	Within Range
Copy The Current Event To Days Wit	thin Range
Select Range: From: (NA) To: (NA)	Select Days: Monday Saturday Tuesday Sunday Wednesday Thursday Friday
Options	
<ul> <li>Include Food/Service Items</li> <li>Include Shifts</li> <li>Include Staffing</li> <li>Include Scheduled Tables</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Use Current Menu Price/Cost</li> <li>Use Current Tax Rates</li> <li>Include Any Discounts</li> <li>Include Diagrams</li> <li>Include Auto-Reminders</li> </ul>
	<u>O</u> K <u>C</u> ancel

### Switching/Editing Account Information for an Event

#### Why would I want to change the account information?

There are two different concepts here: editing information for the existing account and switching the account altogether. It is extremely important to distinguish between the two. For example, imagine a client calls to tell you their area code has changed, so you need to update it in your records. This is an example of editing information for the existing client of an event. However, imagine a client tells you they want to hold the same exact event with you that their colleague held last year. First you would copy the original event, and then change the account from the colleague's name to the one who just called you on the phone. This is not editing existing account information; instead, it is changing or switching accounts completely.

#### **Editing Information for an Existing Account**

- 1. Click the **Additional Client Information** button to the right of the Client name on your Event Manager screen.
- 2. Click the **Show Details** button <sup>[D]</sup> at the top of the Select Account window.
- 3. Click the Account Locked button.
- 4. **<u>READ THE MESSAGE CAREFULLY.</u>** Confirm that you want to edit the account information, not only for this event but for *every other event this account has ever booked with you*.
- 5. Edit as desired.
- 6. Click **OK** when finished.

#### **Switching Accounts Entirely**

- 1. From the Select Account window, click the Account Information button.
- 2. Search for a different account using the **Search Records** or **Incremental Search** tool OR click the **Add New Account** button to add a new account.
- 3. When finished, click **OK**.
- 4. Click **Yes** to confirm.

0	Event Manager: G	ireg's Soccer	Team #	E00002										- = x
			😧 Sele	ct Account				r			X	ettings •		: # = # .
	-Client/Organization	n Informatio								: 🔜 Settings				
	Client/Organizati	on Greg								; 🧊 Jettings		-		\$2,004.00 🔍
	Address	6680	Search	For			i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i	' 🔽   🛔	i 📲					\$320.64
	Telephone	(507)	* Client	it/Organizat	ion	-	City		St/Prov	Telephone	-			\$140.28
	Fax	(507)	+ GI	lessing Wed	lding		Naples		FL	(612) 541-0444				\$43.92
			± GI	ME Consult	ants		Ft. Myers		FL	(612) 559-1859				
	🖽 Event 🖶 Sub	-Event	🛨 Go	oetz/Lyo	onfirm					×				
			± Gr	reg's Soc						P				
	General Miscellar	neous	± Gu	ustave A	S Wo	uld yo	u like to chang	ge the ac	count for	this event <sup>3</sup>				
	Party Name	Grad's Soci	± H	orizon B	<b>U</b>		Terraite Conserve T	T		7				
	Party Name	dieg s socc	• Jo	ohnson, I	To:	n: (	adtech	ream		В		I	c-	turdau
	Sales Rep	Kathy Wilso	> 🛨 La	adtech	_					2		<b>-</b>	29	turday
Þ	Theme	Banquet	± Le	ebron Cc	Con	tinue				9				
	Category	Business	± Le	enox/Ucl		<b>[[]</b>	V	NI-		2		ed 6/24/	2013	
			± Lu	utheran I		l	<u>Y</u> es	<u>IN</u> 0		P		Cu 0/24/	2012 /1	1.45
	Booking Contact	Stubensteir	±Μ				<b>5</b> . 14			(51.0) 551 44.00	_	ed 0/24/	2013 (1	1:45 am)
	Site Contact	Stubensteir	± M	licroage			Ft. Myers		FL	(612) 551-1100				
			± M	Ilcrotech He	earing Inst.		Ft. Myers		FL	(612) 934-3001				
	🧪 Notes		± M	ISUS/PALS			Ft. Myers		FL FL	(507) 389-5784				
	Set up the room	n so all tat		lanles City D	olico Donarte		Naples		FL	(012) 341-9021				
			E N	laples City r Ianles Denta	Assoc	nent	Naples		FL	(239) 888-4321				
			E N	atasha Whit	te		Naples		FL	(239) 896-1295				
			E N	orth Naples	Dart League		Naples		FI	(612) 827-5588				
			(F) (0)	pportunity	Workshop		Ft. Myers		FL	(612) 930-4278				
			±Ρ	SS			Naples		FL	(612) 559-3333				
			144 44 4	< > >> >> >> >> >> >>> >>> >>>>>>>>>>>	* *	4								
						,								
										UK Car	ncel	J		
				特景。	& 🖬 🚽	<b>1</b>	2 6 8		i 🤊 👒	2 🔗 %	2			🔊 🗿 🛃 🖉

## **SECTION 3: Tracking Data**

## **Unit 16: Tracking Current Events**

Topics covered in this unit include:

Running a Current Events Query Customizing the Results Grid Sorting/Grouping Data Saving the Grid View Creating/Saving Filters Printing/Exporting Data Generating Batch Prints Batch Emailing EZ Chart View Using the Client Contacts Query Using the Accounts Receivable Report

### **Running a Current Events Query**

#### What does this tool do?

This powerful tool will quickly query your entire database, and find all events within a particular date range. From the results screen, you can select one, several, or all events listed and print reports, contracts, letters, and other prints. You can even completely manipulate the results screens (since they are both grids) – adding, removing and rearranging columns, sorting and grouping data – and then exporting the details.

#### **Running a Current Events Query**

- 1. Click the **Tools** sidebar on the left side of Caterease.
- 2. Click the button labeled **Current Events**.
- 3. Click the down arrow under <u>Days Out</u>, and set a date range for your query.
- 4. Click under <u>Options</u> to suppress events with a status of Closed, Cancelled, Tentative, Definite, or Prospective.
- 5. Click **OK**.

Create cust	om grid viev	ws or data filte	rs I							
(c)	$\neg$			Caterease						_ 0 X
	Colort Docorto	Disular Administ	attan Ital					💿 Select De	sired Print	x
Home K Cut Arial	Select Reports	v 11 v A- A-	ration Hel	p Search For		88	- 0 -			→ Multiple
Paste Undo Clipboard	I <u>U</u> A·	Editing C	Prints Er Print/Ema	mail Navigation I	Navigate	Find E	Data	Prints Subprints Document	General Extende Paymen s Tax Brea	Financials d Financials its Made akdown
Tools «	Curr	ent Events						Labels	Revenue Revenue	e Summary
Event Wizard	Custom	n: D Views - Y Filte	ers *			: 🔤 🖻 🗖	Chart By Sta		General Event Sp Include	Details pecific Dates Sub-Events
Secounts Receivable	* Event	# Event Date	Status	Client/Organization	Telephone	Sales Rep	Subtotal		Extende	d Details
Active Reminders	₽			Click	here to define a	filter				
Client Contacts	> E0032	9 7/4/2013 (Thu)	Definite	Aid Association for Luthe	(612) 535-7220	Roxanne M. Mc N	3,180.00			
Kan Contacts Made	E0028	6 7/4/2013 (Thu)	Definite	American Family Insuran	(612) 420-9242	Jo Ann Mulnix	1,425.00			
😽 Web Order Manager	E0034	2 7/4/2013 (Thu)	Prospective	CAM/USON Company	(612) 208-3060	Jo Ann Mulnix	818.50			
💯 Shift Manager	E0037	7/3/2013 (Wed)	Definite	Dvorak Reception	(612) 437-0783	Roxanne M. Mc N	3,925.50			
	E0018	34 7/2/2013 (Tue)	Definite	Salassa/Lau Wedding Rec	(941) 555-2938	Roxanne M. Mc N	6,904.50			
	E0000	02 7/6/2013 (Sat)	Tentative	Greg's Soccer Team	(507) 253-1869	Kathy Wilson	2,004.00			
	E0038	1 6/30/2013 (Sun)	Prospective	F.G.C.U.	(239) 590-6653	John Smith	2,160.50		Events Within	Next 14 Days
	E0038	8 6/28/2013 (Fri)	Definite	Naples Dental Assoc.	(239) 888-4321	Kathy Wilson	663.50		-	
	E0040	01 6/28/2013 (Fri)	Tentative	Wiggins, Goodlette & Dav	(239) 678-1245	John Smith	394.50	📃 Close Aft	er Print	Close
	E0042	20 7/7/2013 (Sun)	Definite	East High School	(218) 863-2911	John Smith	2,155.40			
	E0045	54 7/9/2013 (Tue)	Tentative	Ladtech	(612) 415-1252	Kathy Wilson	713.75	98.20	49.97 861	.92
	E0047	70 7/7/2013 (Sun)	Tentative	Abby Perkins	(901) 489-1853	John Smith	972.50	151.60	48.63 1,172	.73
	E0047	1 7/2/2013 (Tue)	Definite	Sunset Technologies	(239) 261-6617	Kathy Wilson	2,755.00	436.80	137.75 3,329	.55
Main Cools C	Cnt:	13 (1 of 13 → → → → * * *	• •				28,072.65	4,322.02	1,855.59	26
🔑 Browse 🛛 💡 Admini	istrator								CAPS	NUM SCRL INS

### Customizing the Grid

#### Can I control what I see in this grid?

Caterease grids offer unprecedented power! These powerful tools let you look at any information you want. You can customize the columns displayed on a grid, sort or group the grid data by any detail, create footers to show subtotals for each of your groupings, and then print or export the grid that you have created. You can even save your custom grid views for future use, making a limitless number of custom displays just a mouse click away!

1. Click the Quick Column Customizing button 🔄, located at the top left of the detail grid (to the left of the first column heading).

**Result:** A drop-down list of column headings appears.

- 2. Click the checkbox next to any optional field name. **Result:** Fields that are checked off will appear as columns in the grid.
- 3. **[Optional]** Hold your left mouse button down on that column name in the list and drag up or down to reposition it on the grid.

**Result:** The column heading is moved to a new position in the grid.

- 4. [Optional] Click to remove the check next to any column heading in the list to remove that column from the grid.
- 5. [Optional] Click the Save Window Settings button 🗔 at the top of the window if you want this to be the new default arrangement for this detail grid, or choose to save this as a custom grid view (see following pages) for instant access later.

**Result:** A confirmation message will appear; click **Yes** and your new arrangement will be saved as the new default look for this grid.

~				6	OR click on	a column	n heading	and drag	/drop in	to p
Ourrent Events	/					/				Х
i 🔼 🔛 🍖				/	: 🔲 🗃 🗔	Chart By	Status	- 1 😼	Settings 🕶	
Custom: 🔟 Views 🗸	4	Filters <del>-</del>								
Event # Event D	ate	Status C	Client/Organization	Telephone	Sales Rep	Subtotal	Serv Chg	Tax	Total	<b>*</b>
Vent #		Tip	Click	here to define a fi	lter					
Account #	1	Serv Chg	id Association for Luthe	(612) 535-7220	Roxanne M. Mc N	3,180.00	457.60	222.60	3.860.20	
V Event Date	~	Tax	merican Family Insuran	(612) 420-9242	Io Ann Mulnix	1 425 00	215 20	94 51	1 734 71	
V Status	~	l otal	AM/USON Company	(612) 208-2060	lo Ann Mulnix	219 50	105.26	52.05	075.01	-
Party Name Client/Organization		Pald	Aivi/ 05014 Company	(612) 200-3000	Downers M. Ma N	2 025 50	572.00	250.20	A 747 07	
Address		Event Cost	Vorak Reception	(012) 457-0785	Roxanne IVI. IVIC IV	5,925.50	1 104 72	492.22	4,747.07	
Address (Other)		Profit	alassa/Lau wedding Rec	(941) 555-2938	Koxanne IVI. IVIC IN	0,904.50	1,104.72	483.32	8,492.54	
City		Booking Contact	reg's Soccer Team	(507) 253-1869	Kathy Wilson	2,004.00	320.64	140.28	2,464.92	
St/Prov		Booking Telephone	.G.C.U.	(239) 590-6653	John Smith	2,160.50	345.68	151.24	2,657.42	
Postal		Booking Cellular	laples Dental Assoc.	(239) 888-4321	Kathy Wilson	663.50	106.16	46.45	816.11	
Country		Booking Title	iggins, Goodlette & Dav	(239) 678-1245	John Smith	394.50	63.12	27.62	485.24	
Telephone		Booking Email	ast High School	(218) 863-2911	John Smith	2,155.40	344.86	150.88	2,651.14	
E Fax		Site Contact	adtech	(612) 415-1252	Kathy Wilson	713.75	98.20	49.97	861.92	
Theme		Site Telephone	bby Perkins	(901) 489-1853	John Smith	972.50	151.60	48.63	1,172.73	1
Category		Site Cellular	unset Technologies	(239) 261-6617	Kathy Wilson	2,755.00	436.80	137.75	3,329.55	
Sales Rep     Reference		Site Fitie								
Business Type		CPG								
Operation		CPG (Sub)								
Pay Method		First								
Booked		Second								
Revised		Third								
Planned		Cancel Type								
Actual		Client Email								
Guaranteed		Loyalty #								
PO#		Master Account								
			]							
Cnt: 13						28,072.65	4,322.02	1,855.59	34,250.26	
₩ -	+ ++	* '*							•	
									_	1

Click the Quick Column Customizing button to access display fields

sition

Click in the checkbox to display or remove columns OR drag and drop to the desired location

### Sorting and Grouping Grid Data (See Image on next page)

#### What if I want to rearrange the data I'm looking at?

Another powerful option in Caterease detail grids is the ability to separate data in to groups based on any grid detail. For example, maybe you would like to see the financial information for all of this month's parties grouped by sales representative — complete with financial subtotals for each group. You can even group within groups — seeing, for example, events grouped by sales representative and then perhaps grouped by status within each sales rep's group.

#### **Sorting Grid Data**

- 1. Click the heading of a column you wish to sort by. *Result: The records are sorted in ascending order by that column.*
- 2. [Optional] Click the same column heading again to sort in descending order by that column.
- 3. **[Optional]** Hold the **[Shift]** key down on your keyboard and click the heading of another column. *Result: Records are now sorted by this second column within the first column you selected. Note: Available in the Professional version only.*

#### **Grouping Data**

- Click your right mouse button on the heading of any column in the grid. *Result:* A pop-up menu appears. *Note:* You must click on the heading of a column; clicking within a column presents a different pop-up menu.
- 2. Select **Group By this Field**. *Result:* A small panel containing your chosen column heading is displayed across the top of the detail grid, and grid data is now separated into groups based on your selection.
- 3. Repeat Step 2 to create sub-groups, or groups within groups (*Professional version only*). *Note:* For example, you could choose to group all events by Theme, and then by Sales Rep within Theme (*sub-groups*).
- 4. Click the plus sign to the left of each group in the grid to display the records in that group.

#### **Removing Groups**

- 1. Click your right mouse button over any column heading in the group panel (the small panel along the top of the results grid.)
  - Note: Each heading must be done individually.
- 2. Select **Remove From Grouping**. *Result:* The records are no longer grouped by that heading.
- 3. Repeat for any other group headings (if necessary).
- 4. Click the **Group By Box** button , located at the top right of the grid, to close the group panel. *Result: The small panel at the top of the grid disappears.*

### Click a column to sort data by column header

Right mouse click and select Group By This Field

2										_
Current Ev	ents									X
i 🕰 🔛 🛛	A				🛛 🕴 🆽 E	📑 🗔 Cha	art By Status	1 🍃	Settings -	
Custom: 🔎	Views 🕶 🛛 🌱 Filter	·s •								
Event #	Event Date	Status 🖌	Client/Organization	Telephone	Subtotal	Sales Pon	San Cha	Тач	Total	Ħ
₽			Click	here to define a filt	er	ĝ↓	Sort Ascending			
> E00329	7/4/2013 (Thu)	Definite	Aid Association for Luthe	(612) 535-7220	3.180.00	Roxar 😑	Group by This Field	2.60	3.860.20	a a
E00286	7/4/2013 (Thu)	Definite	American Family Insuran	(612) 420-9242	1,425.00	Jo An 🖶	Group By Box	4.51	1,734.71	-
E00342	7/4/2013 (Thu)	Prospective	CAM/USON Company	(612) 208-3060	818.50	Jo An	Demons This Column	2.05	975.91	-3
E00371	7/3/2013 (Wed)	Definite	Dvorak Reception	(612) 437-0783	3,925.50	Roxar 🚌	Cield Changes	n 0.29	4,747.87	
E00184	7/2/2013 (Tue)	Definite	Salassa/Lau Wedding Rec	(941) 555-2938	6,904.50	Roxar	Field Chooser	3.32	8,492.54	
E00002	7/6/2013 (Sat)	Tentative	Greg's Soccer Team	(507) 253-1869	2,004.00	Kathy	Alignment	• 0.28	2,464.92	
E00381	6/30/2013 (Sun)	Prospective	F.G.C.U.	(239) 590-6653	2,160.50	John : 🚍	Best Fit	1.24	2,657.42	
E00388	6/28/2013 (Fri)	Definite	Naples Dental Assoc.	(239) 888-4321	663.50	Kathy	Rest Fit (all columns)	6.45	816.11	
E00401	6/28/2013 (Fri)	Tentative	Wiggins, Goodlette & Dav	(239) 678-1245	394.50	John	Dest Hit (all columns)	7.62	485.24	
E00420	7/7/2013 (Sun)	Definite	East High School	(218) 863-2911	2,155.40	John Smith	344.86	150.88	2,651.14	
E00454	7/9/2013 (Tue)	Tentative	Ladtech	(612) 415-1252	713.75	Kathy Wilso	on 98.20	49.97	861.92	
E00470	7/7/2013 (Sun)	Tentative	Abby Perkins	(901) 489-1853	972.50	John Smith	151.60	48.63	1,172.73	
E00471	7/2/2013 (Tue)	Definite	Sunset Technologies	(239) 261-6617	2,755.00	Kathy Wilso	on 436.80	137.75	3,329.55	
Cnt: 13					28,072.65		4,322.02	1,855.59	34,250.26	
10 PP PP PP	112 A MA 44 4 CTI									

### Saving the Grid View

#### What if I have several different grid layouts I need?

Once you create a custom grid display, you can save that view for future use. Perhaps every month you're going to want to look at your financial information grouped by sales representative. Create this view once, then save it to be pulled up every month, with just the click of a button. Views can be saved locally (meaning they will only be available on your machine) or shared across all Caterease users on the network.

- 1. Establish a custom grid view as outlined previously.
- 2. Click the **Views** button at the top left of the results grid display.
- 3. Choose **Custom**. *Result:* The Custom Grid Views window appears.
- [Optional] Click the Shared button at the bottom of the Custom Grid Views window if you want this custom view to be shared with other users on your Caterease network. *Note: The Local button is selected as a default; all local grid views will only be available on your computer.*
- 5. Click the Add Grid View button
- 6. Type a name for your new grid view.
- 7. Click the **Save Current Grid View** button
- 8. Close the Custom Grid Views window.

Image: Control of the second	Vis - Y Filter ent Date 4/2013 (Thu) 4/2013 (Thu) 30/2013 (Sun) 28/2013 (Sun) 7/2013 (Sun) 7/2013 (Sun) 6/2013 (Sun) 6/2013 (Sun) 6/2013 (Sun) 2/2013 (Fri) 9/2013 (Tue) 2/2013 (Tue) 2/2013 (Tue) 4/2013 (Thu) 3/2013 (Wed)	S V Status Definite Prospective Prospective Tentative Definite Tentative Definite Definite Definite Definite	Client Ameri CAM F.G. Wig East Abb Gree Nap Lad	t/Organization ican Family Insuran Custom Grid View Default View Details - No Money Full Financials Grou	Telephone	Subtotal 1,425.00 x 818.50 160.50 y 394.50 972.50 004.00 972.50	Sales Rep Jo Ann Mulnix Jo Ann Mulnix Jo Ann Mulnix John Smith John Smith John Smith John Smith	Serv Chg         I           215.20         1           105.36         3           345.68         6           63.12         3           344.86         5	Tax 94.51 52.05 151.24 27.62	Settings  Total  1,734.71  975.91  2,657.42  485.24
tom: View rent # Eve 00286 7/4, 00342 7/4, 00342 7/4, 00381 6/30 00401 6/28 00420 7/7, 00470 7/7, 0002 7/6, 00388 6/28 00454 7/9, 00388 6/28 00454 7/9, 00389 7/4, 00399 7/4, 00391 7/2, 00389 7/2,	Y         Filter           ent Date         4/2013 (Thu)           4/2013 (Thu)         30/2013 (Thu)           30/2013 (Thu)         30/2013 (Sun)           28/2013 (Fri)         7/2013 (Sun)           6/2013 (Sun)         6/2013 (Sat)           28/2013 (Fri)         9/2013 (Tue)           2/2013 (Tue)         2/2013 (Tue)           2/2013 (Thu)         3/2013 (Wed)	S Version Status Status Status Definite Prospective Prospective Tentative Definite Tentative Definite Tentative Definite Definite Definite Definite Definite Definite Definite	Client Ameri CAM F.G. Wig East Abb Gree Nap Lad	t/Organization ican Family Insurand Custom Grid View Default View Details - No Money Full Financials Grou	Telephone           ( )         -           (612) 428-9242         -           (512) 428-9242         -           (Gamma) 208-2060         -	Sub-total 1,425.00 160.50 160.50 394.50 155.40 972.50 004.00	Sales Rep Jo Ann Mulnix Jo Ann Mulnix Jo Ann Mulnix John Smith John Smit	Serv Chg 2000 2000 2000 2000 2000 2000 2000 20	Tax 94.51 52.05 151.24 27.62	Total 1,734.71 975.91 2,657.42 485.24
rent # Eve 10286 7/4, 10342 7/4, 10342 7/4, 10381 6/33 10401 6/22 10420 7/7, 10470 7/7, 10022 7/6, 10388 6/28 10454 7/9, 10371 7/2, 10329 7/4, 10371 7/2, 10384	ent Date 4/2013 (Thu) 4/2013 (Thu) 30/2013 (Sun) 28/2013 (Sun) 7/2013 (Sun) 7/2013 (Sun) 6/2013 (Sat) 28/2013 (Fri) 9/2013 (Tue) 2/2013 (Tue) 4/2013 (Thu) 3/2013 (Wed)	Status Definite Prospective Prospective Centative Definite Tentative Definite Definite Definite Definite Definite Definite Definite	Client Ameri CAN F.G. East Abb Gree Nap	t/Organization ican Family Insurant Custom Grid View Default View Details - No Money Full Financials Grou	Telephone ( ) - (612) 428-9242	1,425.00 1,425.00 818.50 160.50 394.50 155.40 972.50 004.00	Sales Rep Jo Ann Mulnix Jo Ann Mulnix Jo Ann Mulnix John Smith John Smith John Smith John Smith	Serv Chg 215.20 105.36 345.68 63.12 344.86	Tax 94.51 52.05 151.24 27.62	Total 1,734.71 975.91 2,657.42 485.24
00286         7/4, 1           00286         7/4, 1           00342         7/4, 1           00381         6/33           00401         6/23           00402         7/7, 1           00402         7/7, 1           00402         7/6, 1           00403         6/23           00404         7/9, 1           004054         7/9, 1           004054         7/3, 1           00184         7/2, 1	4/2013 (Thu) 4/2013 (Thu) 30/2013 (Sun) 28/2013 (Sun) 7/2013 (Sun) 7/2013 (Sun) 6/2013 (Sun) 6/2013 (Sun) 28/2013 (Fri) 9/2013 (Tue) 2/2013 (Tue) 4/2013 (Thu) 3/2013 (Wed)	Definite Prospective Prospective Tentative Definite Tentative Definite Definite Definite	Ameri CAM F.G. Wig East Abb Gree Nap Ladt	ican Family Insuran Custom Grid View Default View Details - No Money Full Financials Grou	( ) - (612) 438-9242 200 208 2060 209 Apply Grid Vie ped By Sales Rep	1,425.00 1,425.00 1,60.50 394.50 1,55.40 972.50 004.00	Jo Ann Mulnix Jo Ann Mulnix Jo Ann Mulnix John Smith John Smith John Smith	215.20 105.36 345.68 63.12 344.86	94.51 52.05 151.24 27.62	1,734.71 975.91 2,657.42 485.24
10286         7/4,           10342         7/4,           10342         7/4,           10381         6/33           10401         6/28           10402         7/7,           10402         7/7,           10402         7/7,           10402         7/7,           10002         7/6,           10388         6/28           10454         7/9,           10329         7/4,           10371         7/3,           10184         7/2,	4/2013 (Thu) 4/2013 (Thu) 30/2013 (Sun) 28/2013 (Sun) 7/2013 (Sun) 7/2013 (Sun) 6/2013 (Sun) 6/2013 (Sun) 9/2013 (Fri) 9/2013 (Tue) 2/2013 (Tue) 4/2013 (Thu) 3/2013 (Wed)	Definite Prospective Prospective Tentative Definite Tentative Definite Definite Definite	Ameri CAM F.G. Wig East Abb Greg Nap Lad	ican Family Insuran Custom Grid View Default View Details - No Money Full Financials Grou	(612) 428 9242	1,425.00 818.50 160.50 394.50 155.40 972.50 004.00	Jo Ann Mulnix Jo Ann Mulnix John Smith John Smith John Smith	215.20 105.36 345.68 63.12 344.86	94.51 52.05 151.24 27.62	1,734.71 975.91 2,657.42 485.24
10342         7/4,           10381         6/33           10401         6/28           10401         6/28           10402         7/7,           100401         7/7,           100402         7/7,           100403         7/7,           100404         7/7,           100405         7/9,           100454         7/9,           100454         7/2,           100329         7/4,           100184         7/2,	4/2013 (Thu) 30/2013 (Sun) 28/2013 (Fri) 7/2013 (Sun) 7/2013 (Sun) 5/2013 (Sat) 28/2013 (Fri) 9/2013 (Tue) 2/2013 (Tue) 4/2013 (Thu) 3/2013 (Wed)	Prospective Prospective Tentative Definite Tentative Definite Tentative Definite Definite	CAN F.G. Wig East Abb Gree Nap Lad	Default View Details - No Money Full Financials Grou	Apply Grid Vie	<ul> <li>818.50</li> <li>,160.50</li> <li>394.50</li> <li>,155.40</li> <li>972.50</li> <li>,004.00</li> </ul>	Jo Ann Mulnix John Smith John Smith John Smith	105.36 345.68 63.12 344.86	52.05 151.24 27.62	975.91 2,657.42 485.24
00381         6/30           00401         6/28           00401         6/28           00420         7/7,           00470         7/7,           00002         7/6,           00388         6/28           00454         7/9,           00329         7/4,           00371         7/3,           00184         7/2,	30/2013 (Sun) 28/2013 (Fri) 7/2013 (Sun) 7/2013 (Sun) 6/2013 (Sat) 28/2013 (Fri) 9/2013 (Tue) 2/2013 (Tue) 4/2013 (Thu) 3/2013 (Wed)	Prospective Tentative Definite Tentative Definite Tentative Definite Definite	F.G. Wig East Abb Greg Nap Ladt	Default View Details - No Money Full Financials Grou	Apply Grid View Ped By Sales Rep	,160.50 394.50 ,155.40 972.50	John Smith John Smith John Smith	345.68 63.12 344.86	151.24 27.62	2,657.42 485.24
00401 6/28 00420 7/7/ 00470 7/7/ 00002 7/6/ 00388 6/28 00454 7/9/ 00471 7/2/ 00329 7/4/ 00371 7/3/ 00184 7/2/	28/2013 (Fri) 7/2013 (Sun) 7/2013 (Sun) 6/2013 (Sat) 28/2013 (Fri) 9/2013 (Tue) 2/2013 (Tue) 4/2013 (Thu) 3/2013 (Wed)	Tentative Definite Tentative Tentative Definite Definite Definite	Wig East Abb Greg Nap Ladt	Default View Details - No Money Full Financials Grou	Apply Grid View of the second seco	394.50 ,155.40 972.50	John Smith John Smith John Smith	63.12 344.86	27.62	485.24
00420 7/7/ 00470 7/7/ 00002 7/6/ 00388 6/28 00454 7/9/ 00471 7/2/ 00329 7/4/ 00371 7/3/ 00184 7/2/	7/2013 (Sun) 7/2013 (Sun) 6/2013 (Sat) 28/2013 (Fri) 9/2013 (Tue) 2/2013 (Tue) 4/2013 (Thu) 3/2013 (Wed)	Definite Tentative Tentative Definite Tentative Definite	East Abb Greg Nap Ladt	Default View Details - No Money Full Financials Grou	ped By Sales Rep	,155.40 972.50	John Smith John Smith	344.86	150.00	
00470 7/7/ 00002 7/6/ 00388 6/28 00454 7/9/ 00471 7/2/ 00329 7/4/ 00371 7/3/ 00184 7/2/	7/2013 (Sun) 6/2013 (Sat) 28/2013 (Fri) 9/2013 (Tue) 2/2013 (Tue) 4/2013 (Thu) 3/2013 (Wed)	Tentative Tentative Definite Tentative Definite	Abb Greg Nap Ladt	Details - No Money Full Financials Grou	ped By Sales Rep	972.50	John Smith		150.88	2,651.14
00002 7/6, 00388 6/28 00454 7/9, 00471 7/2, 00329 7/4, 00371 7/3, 00184 7/2,	5/2013 (Sat) 28/2013 (Fri) 9/2013 (Tue) 2/2013 (Tue) 4/2013 (Thu) 3/2013 (Wed)	Tentative Definite Tentative Definite	Greg Nap Ladi	Full Financials Grou	ped By Sales Rep	004.00	20111 Striteri	151.60	48.63	1,172.73
00388 6/28 00454 7/9, 00471 7/2, 00329 7/4, 00371 7/3, 00184 7/2,	28/2013 (Fri) 9/2013 (Tue) 2/2013 (Tue) 4/2013 (Thu) 3/2013 (Wed)	Definite Tentative Definite	Nap Ladi			,004.00	Kathy Wilson	320.64	140.28	2,464.92
00454 7/9, 00471 7/2, 00329 7/4, 00371 7/3, 00184 7/2,	9/2013 (Tue) 2/2013 (Tue) 4/2013 (Thu) 3/2013 (Wed)	Tentative Definite	Ladt			663.50	Kathy Wilson	106.16	46.45	816.11
00471 7/2,/ 00329 7/4, 00371 7/3,/ 00184 7/2,/	2/2013 (Tue) 4/2013 (Thu) 3/2013 (Wed)	Definite Definite				713.75	Kathy Wilson	98.20	49.97	861.92
00329 7/4, 00371 7/3, 00184 7/2,	4/2013 (Thu) 3/2013 (Wed)	Definite	Sun			,755.00	Kathy Wilson	436.80	137.75	3,329.55
00371 7/3, 00184 7/2,	3/2013 (Wed)	Dennite	Aid			,180.00	Roxanne M. Mc N	457.60	222.60	3,860.20
00184 7/2,		Definite	Dvo	Dvo			Roxanne M. Mc N	572.08	250.29	4,747.87
	2/2013 (Tue)	Definite	Sala			,904.50	Roxanne M. Mc N	1,104.72	483.32	8,492.54
			[	🕼 Local 👔 Shar	ed					
nt: 13				1		28,072.65		4,322.02	1,855.59	34,250.26

Click Views to access saved views

Save the grid view locally (Local) or on the server (Shared)

### Creating the Grid Filter (See image on following page)

#### What if I don't want to see all the records that are listed in the grid?

That's what grid filters are all about: filtering data! For example, perhaps you only want to look at events for a particular sales representative. Or maybe you only want to see parties with a particular status. Use the steps described below to filter out those records that you don't want to see.

#### **Establishing a Filter**

- 1. Float your mouse pointer over a column heading in the grid to reveal a black down arrow at the right of the column heading.
- 2. Click the down arrow at the right of a particular column heading for example, the column heading labeled "Status."

**Result:** A drop-down list appears, listing all options available for that column. In our example of "Status," the drop-down list might include the options of "Definite," "Tentative," "Prospective," etc.

- Select an option from the corresponding list.
   Result: A filter is instantly created, filtering out all records that do not match that selection. As an option, you can click the checkbox next to several options in the list to filter by multiple details.
   Note: The details of your filter are indicated in the lower left-hand corner of the grid. Changes made to a filter are automatically stored in temporary memory as long as this screen remains open, and can be retrieved as detailed below.
- 4. Repeat Steps 1-3 as desired to further filter data. *Result: The filter updates to reflect your changes.*

#### **Establishing a Custom Filter**

1. Click the filter icon at the right of a particular column heading - for example, the column heading labeled "Status."

Result: A drop-down list appears.

- 2. Select Custom. *Result:* The Custom Filter window appears.
- 3. Establish your first filter condition for example, choose "Equals" as your comparison by clicking the down arrow on the left side of the window and "Definite" as the status to the right. *Note:* The example outlined above would be intended to filter out all events that do not have a status of "Definite."
- 4. **[Optional]** Select **And** or **Or** and repeat Step 3 on the second line to establish a second condition.
- 5. Click **OK** to set your filter.

## Click the filter icon to set a "snap filter"

0	Current Eve	ents										x
1	Q 🛛 (	*					: 🔳 🗃 🗔	Chart By	Status	- : 🐱	Settings 🕶	
(	Custom: 🔎	Views -	🌱 Filte	rs 🔻								
*	Event #	Event Da	te	Status	Client/Organization	Telephone	Sales Rep	Subtotal	Serv Chg	Tax	Total	Ħ
5	7			(All)		() -						
5	E00329	7/4/2013	(Thu)	Custom.	Aid Association for Luthe	(612) 535-7220	Roxanne M. Mc N	3,180.00	457.60	222.60	3,860.20	日
	E00286	7/4/2013	(Thu)	Prospectiv	American Family Insuran	(612) 420-9242	Jo Ann Mulnix	1,425.00	215.20	94.51	1,734.71	III.
	E00371	7/3/2013	(Wed)	Tentative	Dvorak Reception	(612) 437-0783	Roxanne M. Mc N	3,925.50	572.08	250.29	4,747.87	-3
	E00184	7/2/2013	(Tue)	Definite	Salassa/Lau Wedding Rec	(941) 555-2938	Roxanne M. Mc N	6,904.50	1,104.72	483.32	8,492.54	
	E00388	6/28/201	3 (Fri)	Definite	Naples Dental Assoc.	(239) 888-4321	Kathy Wilson	663.50	106.16	46.45	816.11	
	E00420	7/7/2013	(Sun)	Definite	East High School	(218) 863-2911	John Smith	2,155.40	344.86	150.88	2,651.14	
	E00471	7/2/2013	(Tue)	Definite	Sunset Technologies	(239) 261-6617	Kathy Wilson	2,755.00	436.80	137.75	3,329.55	
		1										
	Cnt: 7							21,008.90	3,237.42	1,385.80	25,632.12	
	× 🔽 (Status	s = Definit	e)							C	ustomize	
H	≪	7 + ++	* * *		<							

Current filter is displayed at the bottom of the screen

### Saving the Grid Filter

Just like custom grid views, you can save your custom filers for future use. Again, these can be saved locally or shared across the Caterease network.

- 1. Establish filters as outlined above.
- 2. Click the **Filters** button at the top left of the results grid display. *Result:* A drop-down list displays.
- 3. Choose Custom.
- 4. **Result:** The Custom Filters window opens.
- 5. [**Optional**] Click the **Shared** button at the bottom of the Custom Filters window if you want this custom filter to be shared with other users on your Caterease network. *Note: The Local button, selected by default, means this filter will be available only on your computer.*
- 6. Click the **Add Filter** button **\***. *Result*: A new filter is added to your list, with the default name New Filter.
- 7. Type a name for your new filter.
- 8. Click the Save Current Filter button *(\* )*.
- 9. Close the Custom Filters window.

Custom Filters	х
8 ¥ 🐉 🛠 🛛 💡	Apply Filter
Kathy Wilson's Events	
Definites Only	
Large Events (Greater than \$2,000.00)	
This Month's Meetings	
Last Months's Events with Balance Du	e
This Week's Lunches	
New Filter	
D Local Shared	Customize
Usi Local	Customize
	:

### **Printing/Exporting Grid Data**

#### Can I print my custom grid or export it?

Sure! Once you've designed your custom grid, you can give it any title you want and print it as a completely customized report! Or, you can easily export it in a variety of formats for use in another software program.

### **Printing a Grid**

- 1. Customize your results grid as explained on the preceding pages.
- 2. Click the **Print Grid** button at the right of the grid display. *Result:* A print preview of your custom grid appears.
- 3. **[Optional]** Click the **Print Title** button at the top of the Print Preview screen to edit the text and format of the title of this print.\_\_\_\_
- 4. Click the **Print** button 🖾 at the top of the Print Preview screen to send the print to your printer.

#### **Exporting Grid Data**

- 1. Click your right mouse button anywhere in the grid display.
- 2. Select Export Data.
- 3. Choose an export format Microsoft Excel, text file, HTML, or XML. *Result:* A window appears for you to enter a name for your exported file and a directory for it to be saved in.
- 4. Click the down arrow next to Save In at the top of the window to choose a location for your exported file.
- 5. Click in the <u>File Name</u> field at the bottom of the window and type a name for your exported file.
- 6. Click Save.

Result: A prompt will appear.

7. Note: If you have the Professional version of Caterease, this prompt will offer to open your export file for you automatically. If you have the Standard version, you will need to open a third-party application on your own and seek out the export file.

0	Current Eve	ents										-	X
1	Q 🖂 (	<b>*</b>						: 🔳 🗃 🗔	Chart By	Status	- 1 5	Settings •	5
C	Custom: 🔎	Views • 🤎	Filters 🕶										
*	Event #	Event Date	Status	° (	Client/O	rganization	Telephone	Sales Rep	Subtotal	Serv Chg	Tax	Total	
5	9		Definite				() -						≣
	E00329	7/4/2013 (TH	nu) Definite	Δ	Aid Asso	ciation for Luthe	(612) 535-7220	Roxanne M. Mc N	3,180.00	457.60	222.60	3,860.20	F
>	E00286	7/4/2013 (TR	u) Definite	Δ	merica	n Family Insuran	(612) 420-9242	Jo Ann Mulnix	1,425.00	215.20	94.51	1,734.71	里
	E00371	7/3/20: 🥐	Select			eception	(612) 437-0783	Roxanne M. Mc N	3,925.50	572.08	250.29	4,747.87	
	E00184	7/2/20:	Expand All			au Wedding Rec.	(941) 555-2938	Roxanne M. Mc N	6,904.50	1,104.72	483.32	8,492.54	
	E00388	6/28/20	Collanse All			ental Assoc.	(239) 888-4321	Kathy Wilson	663.50	106.16	46.45	816.11	
	E00420	7/7/20:	Collapse All			n School	(218) 863-2911	John Smith	2,155.40	344.86	150.88	2,651.14	
	E00471	7/2/20:	Clear Column	Sorting	,	echnologies	(239) 261-6617	Kathy Wilson	2,755.00	436.80	137.75	3,329.55	
		<b>1</b> <b>1</b> <b>1</b> <b>1</b> <b>1</b> <b>1</b> <b>1</b> <b>1</b> <b>1</b> <b>1</b>	Select All Reco Clear Selected Show Footer Show Navigat Color Grid Export Data Print Grid	ion Bar	ds	<ul> <li>Excel Sprei</li> <li>Text File (*</li> <li>HTML File</li> <li>XML File (</li> <li>Adobe Act</li> <li>Constant (</li> </ul>	adsheet :.txt) :".htm) :".xml) robat (".pdf) Contact	-					
/	Cnt: 7					$\backslash$			21,008.90	3,237.42	1,385.80	25,632.12	
	× 🔽 (Status	= Definite)				$\backslash$					C	ustomize	
H	44 4 2 of	7 <b>▶ ₩ ₩</b>	* '*	•								•	
													_



Choose **Export Data** 

### Multiple/Batch Printing (See image on following page)

#### So now that I have a list of parties, can I print all of their contracts?

Believe it or not, you can! You can print a contract, invoice, or other print for any or all events in your list. Or you can print a contract AND an invoice AND other prints – all at one time!

#### **Generating a Print for Multiple Events**

- 1. Select multiple events by holding down your [Shift] or [Ctrl] key while selecting.
- Click the **Print** button.
   *Result:* The Select Desired Print window appears.
- 3. Select the *Prints*, *Sub-Prints*, *Documents*, *or Labels*. *Note: Batch printing is not available for reports*.
- 4. Select a print title.
- Click the **Print** button at the bottom right of the form.
   *Result:* One print for each of the selected events will automatically be sent to your printer.
   *Note:* Batch prints do not generate a Print Preview; they are sent to your printer automatically.

#### Generating Multiple Prints for Multiple Events (Not available in Express version)

- Select an event from your results screen, or hold your [Shift] or [Ctrl] key down to select multiple records.
   Note: The [Ctrl] key lets you select multiple records; the [Shift] key selects two records and all other in between them.
- 2. Click the **Print** button. *Result: The Select Desired Print window appears.*
- Click the Multiple button.
   *Result:* A new panel opens along the right side of the Select Desired Print window.
- 4. Select the *Prints*, *Sub-Prints*, *Documents*, *or Labels tab*. *Note: Multiple printing is not available (and not necessary) for reports.*
- 5. Select a print title.
- 6. Click the right arrow button in the middle of the Select Desired Print window. *Result:* Your selected print title is moved to the right-hand panel.
- 7. Repeat for other desired prints.
- Click the **Print** button the bottom right of the form.
   *Result:* Multiple prints for each of the selected events will be automatically sent to your printer.
   *Note:* Multiple prints do not generate a Print Preview; they are sent to your printer automatically.


## E-mailing in a Batch

#### Great! Now what about e-mailing?

Well, if you have the Professional version of the program, you will not believe what you can do! From any query grid, you can generate batch e-mails and even use merge letters as the outgoing e-mail message! That means a unique e-mail goes out to any number of recipients – complete with optional attachments – all with a single mouse click!

- 1. Select multiple events in the grid by holding down your [Shift] or [Ctrl] key while selecting.
- Click the Email button at the top left of the query results screen.
   Result: An Untitled Message window appears.
   Note: The e-mail address for this outgoing e-mail will default to the Client e-mail associated with each selected record.
- 3. Click the down arrow to the right of the <u>To...</u> field and choose to send the e-mail to the general client email address, or specifically to the booking contact or site contact of the selected events.
- 4. Type a subject for your e-mail into the <u>Subject...</u> field, or click the down arrow to the right of the field to access a custom quick-pick list.
- 5. Type a message as the body of your e-mail in the large white text block in the window. *Note: If* you own the Marketing Tools package, you can use one of your custom merge letters as the body of your e-mail. These letters will automatically merge in information from the current prospect, including name, salutation, current date, etc.
- 6. [Optional] Format the text of your e-mail using the Format toolbar on your e-mail window.
- 7. **[Optional]** Click the **Attach** button at the top of the e-mail window and choose **File** to attach a general computer file to your e-mail, or choose **Print** to attach one or several Caterease event prints.
- 8. *Note:* Attached files and prints appear in the small pane at the bottom of the Email window.
- 9. When finished, click Send.

**Result:** The e-mails are sent through your Outlook program, and any files you have attached are exported.



Click to attach a merge document

## **Using the EZ Chart View**

#### This is amazing! Anything else?

You mean, like single mouse click access to a dynamic graphing feature that will let you have all of the details in your grid in an easy-to-read, presentation-type format? Sure – why not?

#### Viewing a Chart

- 1. Click the **Chart View** button . located at the top of the query results grid. *Result: The grid display changes to a chart.*
- [Optional] Click the down arrow to the right of <u>Chart By</u> (top of display) to choose a different criterion to base your chart on. *Result: The chart updates to reflect your changes.*

**Switching Chart Types** 

- 1. Click **Bar Diagram** at the top right of the chart. *Result:* A drop-down list of chart options appears.
- 2. Click a different chart type to select it.

#### **Customizing the Chart**

- 1. Click **Customize Chart** at the top right of the chart. *Result:* A customization window appears.
- 2. Set optional settings on the Series, Options, and Sort by tabs.
- 3. Click the small **X** at the top right of the Customization window to close it.

#### **Printing the Chart**

- 1. Click the **Print Chart** button at the right of the results screen. *Result:* A print preview screen appears.
- 2. Click the **Print** button at the top left-hand side of the Print Preview screen to send the print to your printer.



Click to customize the chart

## **Viewing Grid Results in Layout View**

#### Am I able to customize the information I would like to view?

Yes! In addition to being able to view grid results in a chart view, you are able to view the grid results in a handy layout view (if you own the Professional version). The fields which display on the layout view are customizable, and the end result can be printed or e-mailed, as described in other sections of this guide.

#### Viewing Grid Results in Layout View

- 1. Click the **Layout View** button <sup>[]]</sup>, located at the top of the query results grid. *Result:* The grid display changes to a layout view.
- 2. Click the **Field Chooser** button , located on the right-hand side of the screen, if you would like to add or remove fields.

	r ánk m				a charcey ou		J.	
om: 🔎	Views • Y Fil	ters *						
								_ [
of 38 (E003	329 - Aid Associ	ation for Lutherans)					*	
lient:	Aid Association	n for Lutherans	Party Name:	Association Dinner	Category:	Mobile		
vent #:	E00329	Status: Definite	Booking Contact:	Barbara Hendricks	Theme:	Meeting		
vent Date:	9/6/2013	Guests: 120 (Act)	Site Contact:	Pam Minick	Telephone:	(612) 535-7220		
ooked:	8/27/2013		Sales Rep:	Roxanne M. Mc Namer	Fax:	(612) 535-1722		
of 38 (F00)	286 - American I	Family Insurance)					\$	
of 38 (E002	286 - American I	Family Insurance)					\$	-
of 38 (E002 lient:	286 - American I American Fami	Family Insurance) ily Insurance	Party Name:	Corporate Luncheon	Category:	Mobile	*	
of 38 (E002 lient: vent #:	286 - American I American Fami E00286	Family Insurance) ily Insurance Status: Definite	Party Name: Booking Contact:	Corporate Luncheon Donna Lucarelli	Category: Theme:	Mobile Meeting	*	
of 38 (E002 lient: vent #: vent Date:	286 - American I American Fami E00286 9/6/2013	Family Insurance) ily Insurance Status: Definite Guests: 50 (Act)	Party Name: Booking Contact: Site Contact:	Corporate Luncheon Donna Lucarelli Michelle Wainscott	Category: Theme: Telephone:	Mobile Meeting (612) 420-9242	*	<b>2</b>
of 38 (E002 lient: /ent #: /ent Date: poked:	286 - American I American Fami E00286 9/6/2013 8/27/2013	Family Insurance) ily Insurance Status: Definite Guests: 50 (Act)	Party Name: Booking Contact: Site Contact: Sales Rep:	Corporate Luncheon Donna Lucarelli Michelle Wainscott Jo Ann Mulnix	Category: Theme: Telephone: Fax:	Mobile Meeting (612) 420-9242 (612) 420-9252	*	-
of 38 (E002 lient: vent #: vent Date: ooked:	286 - American I American Fami E00286 9/6/2013 8/27/2013	Family Insurance) ily Insurance Status: Definite Guests: 50 (Act)	Party Name: Booking Contact: Site Contact: Sales Rep:	Corporate Luncheon Donna Lucarelli Michelle Wainscott Jo Ann Mulnix	Category: Theme: Telephone: Fax:	Mobile Meeting (612) 420-9242 (612) 420-9252	*	-
of 38 (E002 lient: vent #: vent Date: ooked:	286 - American I American Fami E00286 9/6/2013 8/27/2013	Family Insurance) ily Insurance Status: Definite Guests: 50 (Act)	Party Name: Booking Contact: Site Contact: Sales Rep:	Corporate Luncheon Donna Lucarelli Michelle Wainscott Jo Ann Mulnix	Category: Theme: Telephone: Fax:	Mobile Meeting (612) 420-9242 (612) 420-9252	\$	
of 38 (E002 lient: vent #: vent Date: ooked:	286 - American I American Fami E00286 9/6/2013 8/27/2013	Family Insurance) ily Insurance Status: Definite Guests: 50 (Act)	Party Name: Booking Contact: Site Contact: Sales Rep:	Corporate Luncheon Donna Lucarelli Michelle Wainscott Jo Ann Mulnix	Category: Theme: Telephone: Fax:	Mobile Meeting (612) 420-9242 (612) 420-9252	\$	
of 38 (E002 lient: vent #: vent Date: ooked:	286 - American I American Fami E00286 9/6/2013 8/27/2013 8/27/2013	Family Insurance) ily Insurance Status: Definite Guests: 50 (Act) N Company)	Party Name: Booking Contact: Site Contact: Sales Rep:	Corporate Luncheon Donna Lucarelli Michelle Wainscott Jo Ann Mulnix	Category: Theme: Telephone: Fax:	Mobile Meeting (612) 420-9242 (612) 420-9252	*	
of 38 (E002 lient: vent #: vent Date: ooked: of 38 (E002 lient:	286 - American I American Fami E00286 9/6/2013 8/27/2013 8/27/2013 342 - CAM/USOI CAM/USON Co	Family Insurance) ily Insurance Status: Definite Guests: 50 (Act) N Company) pompany	Party Name: Booking Contact: Site Contact: Sales Rep: Party Name:	Corporate Luncheon Donna Lucarelli Michelle Wainscott Jo Ann Mulnix Company Meeting	Category: Theme: Telephone: Fax:	Mobile Meeting (612) 420-9242 (612) 420-9252	*	
of 38 (E002 lient: vent #: vent Date: pooked: of 38 (E002 lient: vent #:	286 - American I American Fami E00286 9/6/2013 8/27/2013 342 - CAM/USON CAM/USON Co E00342	Family Insurance) ily Insurance Status: Definite Guests: 50 (Act) N Company) pmpany Status: Prospective	Party Name: Booking Contact: Site Contact: Sales Rep: Party Name: Booking Contact:	Corporate Luncheon Donna Lucarelli Michelle Wainscott Jo Ann Mulnix Company Meeting Trisha Lupton	Category: Theme: Telephone: Fax: Category: Theme:	Mobile Meeting (612) 420-9242 (612) 420-9252 (612) 420-9252 Mobile	*	
of 38 (E002 lient: vent #: vent Date: ooked: of 38 (E002 lient: vent #: vent #:	286 - American I American Fami E00286 9/6/2013 8/27/2013 342 - CAM/USON CAM/USON Co E00342 9/6/2013	Family Insurance) ily Insurance Status: Definite Guests: 50 (Act) N Company) ompany Status: Prospective Guests: 30 (Act)	Party Name: Booking Contact: Site Contact: Sales Rep: Party Name: Booking Contact: Site Contact:	Corporate Luncheon Donna Lucarelli Michelle Wainscott Jo Ann Mulnix Company Meeting Trisha Lupton Trisha Lupton	Category: Theme: Telephone: Fax: Category: Theme: Telephone:	Mobile Meeting (612) 420-9242 (612) 420-9252 (612) 420-9252 (612) 420-9252 (612) 420-9252 (612) 208-3060	*	

## **Generating the Client Contacts Query**

#### What is a Client Contacts Query?

This special query tool allows you to instantly track all contact people for your various accounts. Choose from a couple of optional settings, and you instantly get a list that you can redesign, print, or export in various formats.

- 1. Click the **Tools** sidebar group and choose **Client Contacts.**
- Optionally choose to see <u>Only One Primary Contact</u>, <u>Contacts With Events Only</u>, <u>Contacts with All</u> <u>Address Fields Entered</u>, or <u>Only Active Accounts</u> by clicking the checkbox next to each option. *Note:* Click a checkbox once to enable that option; click it again to remove the check and disable that option.
- 3. Click **OK**.

*Note:* This grid can be redesigned, printed as a custom report, or exported for use in other software programs.

	-
<u>O</u> K <u>C</u> ancel	
	<u>O</u> K <u>C</u> ancel

*Click the appropriate checkbox* 

#### **Result of a Client Contacts Query:**

fields .	Sort your d	ata by column	header		Print
Client Contacts Results					
🛛 🖓 🎓 Select 🗸					1 12
Custom: D Views • 💜	Filters -	/			
Contact Las	t First	Y Title	Telephone	Fax	Client/Organization
Ð		Click he	re to define a filter		
Miller, Susan Mil	ler Susan	President	(612) 544-8901	(612) 544-2928	Acoustics Associates
Grover, Rochelle Gro	ver Rochelle	Coordinator	(612) 544-8901	(612) 544-2928	Acoustics Associates
Hendricks, Barbara Her	ndricks Barbara	Consultant	(612) 535-7220	(612) 535-4545	Aid Association for Lutherans
Minick, Pam Mir	nick Pam	MIS	(612) 535-7220	(612) 535-1722	Aid Association for Lutherans
Lucarelli, Donna Luc	arelli Donna	Coordinator	(612) 420-9242	(612) 420-9252	American Family Insurance
Wainscott, Michelle Wa	inscott Michelle	Coordinator	(612) 420-9242	(612) 420-9252	American Family Insurance
Dishman, Carole Disl	hman Carole	Instructor	(205) 272-9530	() -	Bass Inc.
Lupton, Trisha Lup	oton Trisha	Marketing Manager	(708) 208-3060	(708) 208-0370	CAM/USON Company
Crow, Michelle Cro	w Michelle	Bride's Mother	(612) 241-3400 X21	() -	Crow Wedding Reception
Powers, Sandy Pov	vers Sandy	Account Manager	(612) 835-5575	(612) 835-7467	Cruises & Vacations, Inc.
Ames, David Am	ies David	Owner	(612) 595-8970	(612) 595-8892	David Ames & Associates
Trimboli, Marie Trir	nboli Marie	Event Coordinator	(612) 378-4000	(612) 378-4040	Diebold Company
Beaver, Trip Bea	iver Trip	Manager	(612) 645-6446	() -	Ducks Unlimited
Dvorak, Kathy Dvo	orak Kathy	Bride	(612) 437-0783	() -	Dvorak Reception
Dvorak, Chris Dvo	orak Chris	Mother of the Bride	(612) 437-0783	() -	Dvorak Reception
Glessing, Scott Gle	ssing Scott	Father	(612) 541-0444	() -	Glessing Wedding
Glessing, Michelle Gle	ssing Michelle	Bride	(612) 541-0444	() -	Glessing Wedding
Clakins, Heather Cla	kins Heather	Office Manager	(612) 559-1859	(612) 559-0720	GME Consultants
Goetz, Michael Goe	etz Michael	Father	(612) 578-9843	() -	Goetz/Lyons Wedding Recepti
Smith, John Sm	ith John	Office Manager	(612) 578-9843	() -	Goetz/Lyons Wedding Recepti
Stubenstein, Greg Stu	benstein Greg	Coach	(507) 253-1869	() -	Greg's Soccer Team
Kavanagh, Mark Kav	ranagh Mark	Marketing Manager	(612) 546-9508	() -	Gustave A. Larson Company
Depisa, Bill Dep	oisa Bill	General Manager	(612) 415-1252	(612) 415-1090	Ladtech
Oster, Brian Ost	er Brian	Office Manager	(612) 415-1252	(612) 415-1090	Ladtech
Lenox, Louise Len	iox Louise		(612) 931-9870	(612) 931-9872	Lenox/Uchtman Wedding
Olsen, Ray Ols	en Ray	Owner	(612) 486-9636	() -	Lutheran Marriage Encounter

## Generating the Accounts Receivable Query

## **Running an Accounts Receivable Query**

- 1. Click the **Tools** sidebar on the left-hand side of Caterease.
- 2. Click the button labeled **Accounts Receivable**.
- 3. Click the down arrow under <u>Days Outstanding</u>, and set a date range for your query.
- 4. Click under <u>Options</u> to exclude events with very small balances.
- 5. Click **OK** to generate the query.

Accounts Receivable	x
Set Parameters	
Days Outstanding	
Total Accounts Receivable	<b></b>
I otal Accounts Receivable Over 30	
Over 60	_
Over 90	
Over 120	
31 - 60	
61 - 90	5
91 - 120	

#### **Query Results:**

• <b>▼</b>	T					Chart by	Status		to setting.
:tom: 🎉 vent#	Event Date	status	Client/Organization	Telephone	Sales Ren	Subtotal	Serv Cha	Tax	Total
wene »	Event bate	Status	Click	here to define a f	ilter	Subtotal	Serveng	Tux	rotar
E00257	6/24/2013 (Mon)	Definite	Acoustics Associates	(612) 544-8901	John Smith	788 75	0.00	78.88	867.63
E00324	4/5/2013 (Fri)	Definite	Bass Inc.	(612) 272-9530	Kathy Wilson	1 644.00	263.04	115.08	2 022.12
E00111	6/25/2013 (Tue)	Definite	Crow Wedding Reception	(239) 472-0011	Jo Ann Mulnix	11.695.00	1.811.20	797.65	14,303,85
E00325	6/9/2013 (Sun)	Definite	Cruises & Vacations. Inc.	(612) 835-5575	John Smith	1.193.50	178.96	78.29	1.450.75
E00369	6/9/2013 (Sun)	Definite	David Ames & Associate	(612) 595-8970	Roxanne M. Mc N	239.25	23.08	11.50	273.83
E00344	6/14/2013 (Fri)	Definite	Diebold Company	(612) 378-4000	Jo Ann Mulnix	2,727.00	412.32	180.40	3,319.72
E00027	5/29/2013 (Wed)	Closed	Glessing Wedding	(612) 541-0444	Kathy Wilson	4,314.50	690.32	302.02	5,306.84
E00355	5/11/2013 (Sat)	Definite	GME Consultants	(612) 559-1859	Kathy Wilson	1,939.00	286.24	125.23	2,350.47
E00186	6/19/2013 (Wed)	Definite	Goetz/Lyons Wedding Re	(612) 578-9843	Roxanne M. Mc N	7,930.00	1,196.80	523.60	9,650.40
E00374	5/14/2013 (Tue)	Closed	Greg's Soccer Team	(507) 253-1869	Kathy Wilson	1,264.00	202.24	88.48	1,554.72
E00375	5/7/2013 (Tue)	Definite	Greg's Soccer Team	(507) 253-1869	Kathy Wilson	384.00	44.64	26.88	455.52
E00319	6/21/2013 (Fri)	Definite	Gustave A. Larson Comp	(612) 546-9508	Roxanne M. Mc N	1,735.75	272.92	121.50	2,130.17
E00378	6/23/2013 (Sun)	Definite	Gustave A. Larson Comp	(612) 546-9508	Roxanne M. Mc N	2,075.75	300.12	145.30	2,521.17
E00379	6/24/2013 (Mon)	Closed	Gustave A. Larson Comp	(612) 546-9508	Roxanne M. Mc N	1,950.75	306.52	136.55	2,393.82
E00315	6/14/2013 (Fri)	Definite	Lutheran Marriage Encou	(612) 486-9636	Jo Ann Mulnix	1,057.00	169.12	73.99	1,300.11
E00164	3/27/2013 (Wed)	Definite	MQHA	(612) 251-8229	Roxanne M. Mc N	1,228.50	172.56	86.00	1,487.06
E00366	5/12/2013 (Sun)	Definite	Microage	(612) 551-1100	Kathy Wilson	191.75	30.68	26.85	249.28
E00334	4/18/2013 (Thu)	Definite	MSUS/PALS	(507) 389-5784	Roxanne M. Mc N	162.00	21.12	11.34	194.46
E00373	6/8/2013 (Sat)	Definite	MSUS/PALS	(507) 389-5784	Jo Ann Mulnix	510.75	76.44	35.76	622.95
E00255	4/13/2013 (Sat)	Definite	NACM	(612) 341-9621	John Smith	144.48	23.12	10.11	177.71
E00330	4/16/2013 (Tue)	Definite	Opportunity Workshop	(612) 930-4278	Kathy Wilson	205.60	13.70	14.39	233.69
E00372	5/8/2013 (Wed)	Definite	Opportunity Workshop	(612) 930-4278	Kathy Wilson	483.15	56.99	33.83	573.97
E00346	4/19/2013 (Fri)	Definite	Polaris Industries	(612) 829-8214	Roxanne M. Mc N	134.00	7.04	9.38	150.42
E00340	4/9/2013 (Tue)	Definite	Professional Developmer	(612) 774-5590	Jo Ann Mulnix	772.50	123.60	54.08	950.18
E00323	6/24/2013 (Mon)	Definite	PSS	(612) 559-3333	Kathy Wilson	2,213.00	322.08	154.91	2,689.99
E00349	4/6/2013 (Sat)	Definite	PSS	(612) 559-3333	Kathy Wilson	695.00	92.80	48.65	836.45
Cnt: 75						93,830.33	13,962.82	6,284.67	114,077.82

## **Running the Accounts Receivable Report**

#### **Running an Accounts Receivable Report**

- 1. Click the **Reports** ribbon tab.
- 2. Click the **Financials** button and select **Accounts Receivable**.
- 3. Click the down arrow under <u>Accounts Receivable As Of</u> and set a date range for your query.
- 4. Click the checkbox next to any option to select it for your report:
  - Show Payments- Click to show payments on the report
  - **Include Events with Negative Balances**-Click to include events that have negative balances (events with credits applied)
  - Include Events with Very Small Balances-Click to include events with small balances (of a few pennies)
  - Include Payments Made After Accounts Receivable As Of Date-This option includes payments on the report even if they were made after the "as of" date you have selected.
- 5. Click **OK** to generate the report.

Payments Made	x
Set Parameters	
Date Range	
<ul> <li>Less Than Or Equal To</li> <li>Greater Than Or Equal To</li> <li>Within Date Range</li> <li>Relative Date Range</li> </ul>	6/1/2013 • thru 6/30/2013 • This month •
Title	
Payments Made	
Base Results On	
<ul> <li>Payment Date</li> <li>Event Date</li> <li>Either Payment Date OR Event</li> </ul>	t Date
Options	
Group By Payment Date  Include Details	
Close After Printing	<u>O</u> K <u>C</u> ancel

# **Unit 17: Using the Events Query**

Topics covered in this unit include:

Building a Custom Query Modifying and Saving Queries Generating Prints and Reports Editing an Events Query in a Batch

## **Querying Events**

#### What is an Events Query?

The Events Query tool allows you to search through your entire database and find only those events you want to see. You can set any number of criteria to search by, and even save queries for future use. Once a query has been performed, you can print various reports based on the results, as well as event prints for any and all events on your results screen.

#### **Creating a Query**

- 1. Select **Events Query** from the **Queries** sidebar.
- 2. Click on the Click here to add a new condition button to add a criterion (condition). A condition will be added stating "Event Date equals <empty>."
- 3. Click on the words **Event Date** in the condition and choose any condition from the drop-down list. This will be the first criteria you search by.
- 4. Click the comparison word next to your criteria and choose any option. Comparisons might say "Is," "Contains," "Doesn't Contain," "Is Empty," "Is Between," etc.
- 5. Click <empty> in the condition and choose a value for the condition to be compared to. These lists are dynamic. If you are searching by <u>Event Theme</u>, then this list will be your quick-pick list of themes. If you are searching by date, this list will be days or ranges of days. If you are searching by financial fields, you will be given a window to type a specific value.
- 6. Add as many query conditions as desired following the steps above.

#### **Executing the Query**

- 1. Create or edit a query as described above.
- 2. Click the **Perform Query** (lightning bolt) button 🥰 .

					$\checkmark$			-
	* [ <b>]</b> 🖌 🖗 [ (i	ustom: 🔟 Vie	ws Z Queries •		📶 🖪 Chart	By Status	🔹 🕴 👸 Settings 🖲	
Criteria								
Main Query	AND applies to the	e main query						
Th	<u>eme equals</u> Meetir	ng						
	tegory equals Lund	th .						
	ant Date lis greater t	than a gual to	3/21/2011					
	situbate is greater t	nan <del>or</del> equarto	3/21/2011					
Click h	ere to add a new cond	dition						
			*	······ <b>·</b>	1			
Results					-			
Event #	Event Date	Status	Client/Organization	Telephone	Theme	Category	Sales Rep	1
▲ ± E00286	3/26/2011 (Sat)	Definite	American Family Insurance	(612) 420-9242	Meeting	Lunch	Jo Ann Mulnix	
. E00417	5/1/2011 (Sun)	Tentative	David Ames & Associates	(612) 595-8970	Meeting	Lunch	Roxanne M. Mc N	
E00336	6/1/2011 (Wed)	Tentative	Ladtech	(612) 415-1252	Meeting	Lunch	Kathy Wilson	
E00454	3/31/2011 (Thu)	Tentative	Ladtech	(612) 415-1252	Meeting	Lunch	Kathy Wilson	H
E00304	7/6/2011 (Wed)	Definite	Robert Hamilton Company	(612) 544-1234	Meeting	Lunch	Kathy Wilson	
	10/24/2011 (Mor	<ul> <li>Prospective</li> </ul>	Softball Tournament	(507) 387-6031	Meeting	Lunch	Roxanne M. Mc N	
	4/17/2011 (Sun)	Tentative	Naples City Police Department	(239) 777-1234	Meeting	Lunch	Jo Ann Mulnix	

Use asterisk for column headings and arrangement /view

## **Saving Custom Queries**

#### Can I save queries for future use?

Any custom query you build – no matter how many conditions – can be saved so that in the future it can be run, with a single click!

#### Saving a Custom Query

- 1. Create an Events Query as described on the previous page.
- 2. Click the **Queries** button at the top left of the results grid display.
- 3. Choose **Custom**. *Result:* The Custom Queries window displays.
- [Optional] Click the Shared button at the bottom of the Custom Queries window if you want this custom query to be shared with other users on your Caterease network.
   Note: The Local button is selected as a default; all local queries will only be available on your computer.
- 5. Click the Add Query button
- 6. Type a name for your new query.
- 7. Click the **Save Current Query** button
- 8. Close the Custom Queries window.

Events Query Events Query Custom: Very Cutes* Cherica Che		/						
Criteria       Wews*	🚳 Events Query						I	= x
Criteria       Kathy's Lunches This Month         Main Quees       Auge of applies to the main query         Image of the status       Figure Prospective/Textative Meetings         This Year's Velow Page Results       This Month's Lunch Meetings         Cick here to add a new condition       Custom         Event B       Sales Rep         Event B       Colorable         Event B       Sales Rep         Event B       Colorable         Event B       Sales Rep         Event B       Colorable         Event B       Colorable         Event B       Colorable <tr< th=""><th>i 🔃 🐖 🥐 i 🍕 🥒 i Custom: 🗾 Views</th><th>- 🔎 Queries -</th><th></th><th>1</th><th>🔢 🖪 Chart B</th><th>By Status</th><th>🔹 🕴 😽 Settings 🕶</th><th></th></tr<>	i 🔃 🐖 🥐 i 🍕 🥒 i Custom: 🗾 Views	- 🔎 Queries -		1	🔢 🖪 Chart B	By Status	🔹 🕴 😽 Settings 🕶	
Hein Duey MO apples to the main query         Image: Status         Image: Status         Cick here to add a new condition             Image: Status             Image: Status         Image: Status             Image: Status             Image: Status         Image: Status             Image: Status             Image: Status         Image: Status         Image: Status         Image: Status         Image: Status             Image: Status         Image: Status             Image: Status         Image: Status         Image: Status         Image: S	Cuiteria	Kathy's Lun	ches This Mont	h				
Results       Event #       Event Date       Status       Client/Organization       Telephone       Theme       Category       Sales Rep       Main	Main Query AND applies to the main query Theme equals Meeting Category equals Lunch Event Date is greater than or equal to 3 Click here to add a new condition	Future Pros This Year's This Month' /21, Custom	pective/Tentat Yellow Page Re s Lunch Meetin	ive Meetings sults gs				
Event #       Event Jate       Status       Client/Organization       Telephone       Theme       Category       Sales Rep         #       E00286       3/26/2011 (Sat)       Definite       American Family Insurance       (612) 420-3242       Meeting       Lunch       Jo Ann Mulnix         #       E00286       3/26/2011 (Sut)       Tentative       David Ames & Associates       (612) 420-3242       Meeting       Lunch       Annohulnix         #       E00366       6/1/2011 (Wod)       Tentative       Ladtech       (612) 415-1252       Meeting       Lunch       Kathy Wilson         #       E00304       7/6/2011 (ThU)       Tentative       Ladtech       (612) 544-1234       Meeting       Lunch       Kathy Wilson         #       E00304       7/6/2011 (Wod)       Definite       Robert Hamilton Company       (612) 544-1234       Meeting       Lunch       Rathy Wilson         #       E00382       4/17/2011 (Sun)       Tentative       Soltball Tournament       (239) 777-1234       Meeting       Lunch       Jo Ann Mulnix         #       E00382       4/17/2011 (Sun)       Tentative       Naples City Police Department       (239) 777-1234       Meeting       Lunch       Jo Ann Mulnix         Image: City 7       Image: City 7	Results							
Image: Construction of the image: Constructi	* Event # Event Date Status	Client/Organization		Telephone	Theme	Category	Sales Rep	
	> ± E00286 3/26/2011 (Sat) Definite	American Family Insu	ance	(612) 420-9242	Meeting	Lunch	Jo Ann Mulnix	
P E00336 6/1/2011 (Wed) Tentative Ladtech (612) 415-1252 Meeting Lunch Kathy Wilson   P E00454 3/31/2011 (Thu) Tentative Ladtech (612) 415-1252 Meeting Lunch Kathy Wilson   P E00304 7/6/2011 (Wed) Definite Robert Hamilton Company (612) 544-1234 Meeting Lunch Kathy Wilson   P E00318 10/24/2011 (Wed) Definite Robert Hamilton Company (612) 544-1234 Meeting Lunch Kathy Wilson   P E00318 10/24/2011 (Wed) Definite Robert Hamilton Company (612) 544-1234 Meeting Lunch Robert Hamilton Company   P E00318 10/24/2011 (Wed) Definite Robert Hamilton Company (612) 544-1234 Meeting Lunch Robert Hamilton Company   P E00318 10/24/2011 (Wed) Definite Robert Hamilton Company (512) 544-1234 Meeting Lunch Robert Hamilton Company   P E00382 4/17/2011 (Sun) Tentative Naples City Police Department (239) 777-1234 Meeting Lunch Jo Ann Mulnix	± E00417 5/1/2011 (Sun) Tentative	David Ames & Associ	ates	(612) 595-8970	Meeting	Lunch	Roxanne M. Mc N.	
E00454 3/31/2011 (Thu) Tentative Ladtech (612) 415-1252 Meeting Lunch Kathy Wilson   I E00304 7/6/2011 (Wed) Definite Robert Hamilton Company (612) 544-1234 Meeting Lunch Kathy Wilson   I E00318 10/24/2011 (Mor Prospective Softball Tournament (507) 387-6031 Meeting Lunch Robert Maximum Robert Maximum   I E00382 4/17/2011 (Sun) Tentative Naples City Police Department (239) 777-1234 Meeting Lunch Jo Ann Mulnix	E00336 6/1/2011 (Wed) Tentative	Ladtech		(612) 415-1252	Meeting	Lunch	Kathy Wilson	
Image: Constraint of the constraint o	E00454 3/31/2011 (Thu) Tentative	Ladtech		(612) 415-1252	Meeting	Lunch	Kathy Wilson	黽
		Robert Hamilton Com	pany	(612) 544-1234	Meeting	Lunch	Kathy Wilson	
Image: Big 100382       4/17/2011 (Sun)       Tentative       Naples City Police Department       (239) 777-1234       Meeting       Lunch       Jo Ann Mulnix         Image: Display the state of th		Softball Tournament		(507) 387-6031	Meeting	Lunch	Roxanne M. Mc N.	1
Cnt 7           !!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!	E00382 4/17/2011 (Sun) Tentative	Naples City Police De	partment	(239) 777-1234	Meeting	Lunch	Jo Ann Mulnix	
	Cnt: 7 Kt {t < ▶ ▶ ₩ * '*							

Click Queries to open a query or save a custom query

Choose **Custom** to save the new query

## Editing an Events Query in a Batch

#### Am I able to change some information about an entire group of customers?

Yes! You can make changes to multiple items simultaneously within your Events Query. Change such items as status, tax rates, service charge rates, or a host of other options.

- 1. Create an Events Query as described on the previous page.
- 2. In the main pane of the window, select multiple items by either holding your [Shift] key down to select a group of contiguous items or by holding your [Ctrl] key down to select items at random.
- 3. Click your right mouse button over any one of the selected items. *Result:* A pop-up menu of options appears.
- 4. Choose **Batch Processing**. *Result: The Batch Processing window* opens.
- 5. On the **General** tab of the Batch Processing window, click the checkbox next to any field you would like to change for all of your selected items.
- 6. In the field itself, enter the new value you would like for the selected items. *Note:* Most fields have custom quick-pick lists for your convenience. Some have checkboxes you can enable or disable for the selected items.
- 7. When finished, click **OK**. *Result*: Your changes are applied and a confirmation appears. Depending on the number of changes/items, this could take a few minutes.

Events	s Query											ΞX
i 🔍 🕸	⊴ 🌈	: 🖗	<b>/</b>	Custom:	🔎 Vie	ws 🕶 🔎 C	Queries 🕶		🗄 🛄 🖪 Chart I	By Status	👻 😳 Setting	gs 🕶 🗖
Criteria	3											
Main	Query	AND	applies	to the m	ain quer	/						
	. <u>Ever</u>	<u>nt #</u> 🙆	Batch	Processi	ng			х				
	Click he	re to	Gene	ral	Gene	eral						
					Party	Name						
			Gratu	iity	Statu	3						
		s	Service C	Charge	Sales	Rep	Prospective					
			Taxe	es	Them	ne	Tentative Definite					
Result	\$				Refer	ence	Closed					
* Event	t# Ev	vent	Miscella	neous	Categ	jory	Cancelled		Theme	Category	Sales Rep	▲ 🔛
> E0025	57 7/	/2/20			Busin	ess Type			Birthday Party	Social	John Smith	
> E0032	29 9/	/6/20			Oper	ation			Meeting	Mobile	Roxanne M. Mc N	
> E0028	36 9/	/6/20			Billin	g			Meeting	Mobile	Jo Ann Mulnix	
> E0032	24 6/	/8/20			Clien	t			Banquet	Business	Kathy Wilson	巴
> E0034	12 9/	/6/20			City Ch/D-				Meeting	Mobile	Jo Ann Mulnix	
> E0011	L1 8/	/28/2			Docta	DV I			Wedding Recepti	Group Sales	Jo Ann Mulnix	
> E0032	25 8/	/12/2			1 0310				Meeting	Business	John Smith	
> E0036	59 8/	/12/2		Ľ					Meeting	Business	Roxanne M. Mc N	
> E0034	14 8/	/17/2					<u>О</u> К	<u>C</u> ancel	Banquet	Social	Jo Ann Mulnix	
> E0035	56 9/	/17/2013	3 (Tue)	Definite		Ducks Unlin	nited	(612) 645-6446	Banquet	Business	Roxanne M. Mc N	
> E0037	71 9/	/5/2013	(Thu)	Definite		Dvorak Rece	eption	(612) 437-0783	Wedding Recepti	Group Sales	Roxanne M. Mc N	
> E0002	27 8/	/1/2013	(Thu)	Closed		Glessing We	edding	(612) 541-0444	Wedding Recepti	Group Sales	Kathy Wilson	
> E0035	55 7/	/14/2013	3 (Sun)	Definite		GME Consu	ltants	(612) 559-1859	Banquet	Business	Kathy Wilson	
> E0018	36 8/	/22/2013	3 (Thu)	Definite		Goetz/Lyon	s Wedding Reception	(612) 578-9843	Wedding Recepti	Group Sales	Roxanne M. Mc N	
> E0029	98 8/	/14/2013	3 (Wed)	Cancelle	d	Greg's Socc	er Team	(507) 253-1869	Meeting	Business	Kathy Wilson	
> E0037	74 7/	/17/2013	3 (Wed)	Closed		Greg's Socc	er Team	(507) 253-1869	Banquet	Business	Kathy Wilson	
> E0037	75 7/	/10/2013	3 (Wed)	Definite		Greg's Socc	er Team	(507) 253-1869	Meeting	Business	Kathy Wilson	
Cnt:	129											
144 44	4 7 of	120	66 66I -	* *								-
	, 70	125	er rel	τ τ								

# Unit 18: Activity Queries vs. Reports

Topics covered in this unit include:

Using the Food/Service Activity Query Generating a Food/Service Items Report Using the Payments Activity Query Generating the Payments Made Report

## Food Service Activity Query

#### What is a Food/Service Activity Query?

This dynamic tool can show you all food or service items that have been ordered for an entire day or date range. You can then the results screen (described on the following page) to zero in on the exact details you want to see for example, how many equipment items were used in a particular room, how many dessert items a specific sales representative sold, etc. In addition, the results of the query can be exported as an Excel spreadsheet, text file, HTML file, or XML file. As you can imagine, you can further manipulate the data in Excel to produce even more varied reporting.

#### Performing a Food/Service Query

- 1. Click the Queries sidebar on the left-hand side of the screen.
- 2. Click the **Food/Service Activity** button.
- 3. Choose to track food/service items ordered before or on a specific date, after or on a specific date, or within a date range.
- 4. Choose to exclude items that have no quantities, or ones that have been ordered for cancelled events, or exclude modifiers.
- 5. Click OK.



## Food Service Activity Query Results Screen

#### What can I do with the results of my activity query?

As with any other details grid in the program, the results screen of the Food/Service Activity Query can be manipulated in many powerful ways. You can add or remove various columns of information to the grid, sort, or group the data by any detail, and even perform various "snap filters" to instantly filter out data.

#### Adding Columns

- 1. Click the **Quick Column Customizing** button, located at the top left of the detail grid (to the left of the first column heading).
- 2. Click the checkbox next to any optional field name.
- 3. **[Optional]** Hold your left mouse button down on that column name in the list and drag up or down to reposition it within the grid.
- 4. Remember to click the **Save Window Settings** button **i** if you want to save your new arrangement.

#### **Sorting Data**

1. Click the heading of a column you wish to sort by.

#### Using the "Snap Filter" Tool

- 1. Click the filter icon at the right of any column heading.
- 2. Make a selection from the corresponding drop-down list of choices.
- 3. Repeat steps 1 and 2 as desired to set more filter options.

Click to add or remove columns to display

		Ci	lick the filter ico	n to set a "snap	filte <u>r</u> "			
Food/Se	rvice Items: 6/1/2013 6/30/2013				/		- = ;	x
🗄 🗋 Print -				: 🔳 🖪 Ch	rt By Category	-	😪 Settings 🕶 🗌	a
Curtom	Views 🗴 🐸 Filters 🛪							
Custoner y	News Tricers	Deep Area	Color Dore	Catanana	Drive	05.	Tatal	5
* Event #	Name	Prep Area	Sales Kep	(All)	Price	Qty	Iotai	7
7				(Custom)			<b>t</b>	i
> E00298	Lite Start	Hot Line	Kathy Wilson	(Blanks)	\$5.50	20	\$110.00	
E00379	Le buffet des Cieux	Hot Line	Roxanne M. Mc Na	(NonBlanks)	\$10.95	85	\$930.75	相
E00373	Continental Breakfast	Cold Prep	Jo Ann Mulnix	AV Equipment	\$3.95	20	\$79.00	
E00373	Assorted pastries	Hot Line	Jo Ann Mulnix	Beer	\$18.00	3	\$54.00	3
E00373	Assorted fresh fruit	Cold Prep	Jo Ann Mulnix	Break Item	\$2.25	10	\$22.50	
E00298	Muffins	Hot Line	Kathy Wilson	📝 Breakfast	\$18.00	1	\$18.00	
E00298	Assorted fresh fruit	Cold Prep	Kathy Wilson	Decoration	\$2.25	10	\$22.50	
E00298	Bagels	Hot Line	Kathy Wilson	Dessert	\$15.00	1	\$15.00	
E00298	Assorted fresh fruit	Cold Prep	Kathy Wilson	Dinner	\$2.25	10	\$22.50	
E00325	The Skyway Buffet	Hot Line	John Smith	Hors D'oeuvres	\$10.95	25	\$273.75	
E00458	Continental Breakfast	Kitchen	Kathy Wilson	Liquor	\$7.78	8	\$62.24	
E00458	Midwesterner	Hot Line	Kathy Wilson	Lunch	\$11.29	22	\$248.38	
E00458	Eye Opener	Hot Line	Kathy Wilson	Room rental	\$15.95	5	\$79.75	
E00458	Morning Delight	Hot Line	Kathy Wilson	Wine Wine	\$15.95	5	\$79.75	
E00458	Daybreaker	Hot Line	Kathy Wilson	Breakfast	\$15.95	5	\$79.75	
Cnt: 15						230	2,097.87	
× 🗹 (Cat	tegory = Breakfast)						Customize	

Current filter is displayed at bottom of display

## **Tracking Food/Service Items in Express and Standard Versions**

#### Can I just get a quick printed report of menu items for a date range?

The Food/Service Items Report is available no matter what version of Caterease you have, and – although not quite as flexible as the query tool on the preceding pages – it is nonetheless very flexible in its own right. This report allows you to track menu items ordered for events during any date range.

#### **Running the Food/Service Item Report**

- 1. Click the **Reports** drop-down menu at the top of the Caterease screen.
- 2. Choose the **Management** subgroup.
- 3. Select the Food/Service Items report.
- 4. Select a specific date or date range to track menu items for, or use the relative date range options. *Note: Items ordered for events occurring during this date range will be listed on the report.*
- 5. **[Optional]** Enter a custom title for the report.
- 6. **[Optional]** Click the down arrow under <u>Exclude Status</u> and select one or more event statuses to be excluded from the report.
- 7. [Optional] Click the down arrow under <u>Group By</u> and choose to group menu items by a particular detail.
- 8. **Optional**] Click the checkboxes under <u>Sort Order</u> and choose to sort menu items by a particular detail.
- 9. **[Optional]** Click the checkboxes at the bottom of the window to optionally Exclude Items Without Quantities and to generate Separate Pages For Each Group.

Food/Service Items	
Set Parameters	
Date Range	
<ul> <li>Less Than Or Equal To</li> <li>Greater Than Or Equal To</li> <li>Within Date Range</li> </ul>	6/1/2013 - thru 6/30/2013
<ul> <li>Relative Date Range</li> </ul>	This month
Title	
Food/Service Items	
Options	
Exclude Status	
None selected	
Group By	Sort Order
Category -	V Event #
Food/Service Item -	☑ Date ☑ Item Name
Separate Pages For Each Grou	up Total Prep Area Category
Close After Printing	<u>O</u> K <u>C</u> an

## **Running the Payments Activity Query**

#### What is a payments activity query?

The powerful Payments Activity Query shows you all payments that have been received on a particular date or during a date range. You can then run various "snap filters" (described previously) to zero in on the exact details you want to see - for example, how many payments had a Pay Method of "Credit Card," how many were received for a particular Sales Representative, etc.

#### Performing a Payments Activity Query

- 1. Click the **Payments Activity** button on the **Queries** sidebar group.
- 2. Choose to track payments received before or on a specific date, after or on a specific date, or within a date range.
- 3. Optionally choose to exclude events or group bookings that have been cancelled, to include only events that have been closed and also whether or not to include group bookings (if you own the Guestrooms Manager to track sleeping rooms).
- 4. Click **OK** to generate the query.

Payments Activity Query	
Set Parameters	
Date Range	
🔿 Less Than Or Equal To	6/1/2013 - thru 6/30/2013 -
Greater Than Or Equal To	
Within Date Range	
Relative Date Range	This month 👻
Options	
Exclude Cancelled Events (A	And Group Bookings)
Only Closed Events	
Include Group Booking Pay	ments
 ↑	
Close After Running	<u>O</u> K <u>C</u> ancel

Choose from various query options

## Viewing the Results of a Payment Activity Query

#### What can I do with the results of my activity query?

After you have customized the details appearing on your results grid – adding and removing columns, sorting and grouping data, as described on previous pages – you can export that data or even print the grid as a custom report.

#### **Exporting Grid Data**

- 1. Arrange your grid data as you want it.
- 2. Click your right mouse button anywhere on the grid.
- 3. Select Export Data.
- 4. Choose a format to export to.

#### **Printing Grid Data**

- 1. Arrange your grid data as you want it.
- 2. Click the **Print Grid** button <sup>115</sup> at the top right of the results grid.
- 3. In the Print Preview window that appears, click the **Print** button to send the print to your default printer.

#### Click Format > Title from the Print Preview screen to create the custom title

6	Payment Result	s: 6/1/2012 - 6/27/2012				- =	×
ł	ᢖ Print 🔹 🎓			1	Chart By Business	Type 🔹 🕴 😼 Settings 🕶	
C	Custom: 📁 View	vs 🔹 🌱 Filters 🕶					
*	Event #	Client/Organization	Sales Rep 🔷 📍	Amount	Pay Method	Business Type	
8			Jo Ann Mulnix				
>	E00286	American Family Insurance	Jo Ann Mulnix	\$350.00	Credit Card	Restaurant	
Γ	E00111	Crow Wedding Reception	Jo Ann Mulnix	\$500.00	Credit Card	Full Service	₩,
Γ	E00111	Crow Wedding Reception	Jo Ann Mulnix	\$500.00	Credit Card	Full Service	
Γ	E00111	Crow Wedding Reception	Jo Ann Mulnix	\$1,000.00	Credit Card	Full Service	
Γ	E00111	Crow Wedding Reception	Jo Ann Mulnix	\$1,000.00	Credit Card	Full Service	
Γ	E00344	Diebold Company	Jo Ann Mulnix	\$500.00	Direct Bill	Drop-Off	
	E00344	Diebold Company	Jo Ann Mulnix	\$500.00	Direct Bill	Drop-Off	
	E00344	Diebold Company	Jo Ann Mulnix	\$972.65	Direct Bill	Drop-Off	
	E00007	Horizon Business Services	Jo Ann Mulnix	\$500.00	Credit Card	Group Booking	

		Event Pa	yments		
Event #	Client/Organization	Sales Rep	Amount	Pay Method	Busin
E00286	American Family Insurance	Jo Ann Mulnix	\$350.00	Credit Card	Restau
E00111	Crow Wedding Reception	Jo Ann Mulnix	\$500.00	Credit Card	Full Se
E00111	Crow Wedding Reception	Jo Ann Mulnix	\$500.00	Credit Card	Full Se
E00111	Crow Wedding Reception	Jo Ann Mulnix	\$1,000.00	Credit Card	Full Se
E00111	Crow Wedding Reception	Jo Ann Mulnix	\$1,000.00	Credit Card	Full Se
E00344	Diebold Company	Jo Ann Mulnix	\$500.00	Direct Bill	Drop-
E00344	Diebold Company	Jo Ann Mulnix	\$500.00	Direct Bill	Drop-
E00344	Diebold Company	Jo Ann Mulnix	\$972.65	Direct Bill	Drop-
E00007	Horizon Business Services	Jo Ann Mulnix	\$500.00	Credit Card	Group
Cnt: 9			5,822.65		
Tent. 3			5,822.05		

## **Tracking Payments Items in Express and Standard Versions**

#### Can I just get a quick printed report of payments received during a date range?

Just like the Food/Service Items Report discussed earlier, the Payments Made Report is a quick, easy way to track payment details. Again, it is not quite as flexible as the Activity Query option – however, it is available in all versions of the program.

#### **Running the Payments Made Report**

- 1. Click the **Reports** drop-down menu at the top of the Caterease screen.
- 2. Choose the **Financials** subgroup.
- 3. Select the Payments Made report.
- 4. Select a specific date or date range to track payments for, or use the relative date range options. *Note: This date range can reflect the date the payment was received, the date of the corresponding event, or either (see below).*
- 5. **[Optional]** Enter a custom title for the report.
- 6. Choose whether you want your selected date range to reflect the dates payments were received, the dates events are held, or either.
- 7. Choose to group the report results by a particular detail choose from among Payment Date, Event Date, Pay Method, Sales Rep, Business Type, or Operation.
- 8. **[Optional]** Click the checkbox at the bottom of the window to optionally include details such as payment comment, check number, card number (last four digits), approval number, etc., from the report.

Payments Made	x
Set Parameters	
Date Range	
<ul> <li>Less Than Or Equal To</li> <li>Greater Than Or Equal To</li> </ul>	6/1/2013 • thru 6/30/2013 •
<ul> <li>Within Date Range</li> <li>Relative Date Range</li> </ul>	This month 🔹
Title	
Payments Made	
Base Results On	
<ul> <li>Payment Date</li> <li>Event Date</li> <li>Either Payment Date OR Event</li> </ul>	ent Date
Options	
Group By Payment Date	
Include Details	
Close After Printing	OK Cancel

# **Unit 19: Prospect Manager**

Topics covered in this unit include:

Adding Next Actions and Next Action Dates Setting a Prospect Status Establishing a Filter

## **Using the Prospect Manager Tool**

#### How can the Prospect Manager tool help me manage my leads?

Prospect Manager allows you to maintain a detailed database of leads, separate from your accounts. If you own the Prospect Manager add-in, you are able to schedule the next action you need to take for each of those lead, along with a next action date. In addition, you can set up a filter in your Prospect Manager to instantly show you all prospects with a next action date of today (and, for that matter, your name as a sales rep), all with the click of a button!

#### Selecting an Action Date

- 1. Access Prospect Manager by clicking the **Prospect Manager** button located on the Main Caterease sidebar.
- 2. Click into the <u>Next Date</u> field, located at the top of the Prospect Manager screen.
- 3. Type a date into the field, or click down arrow to the right of the <u>Next Date</u> field to access a dropdown calendar.

*Note:* There are two different drop-down calendars from which to choose: The first drop-down calendar (to the immediate right of the Next Date field) drops down the "standard" calendar view; the second drop-down calendar, pictured on the next page, indicates the number of next actions that have been set for a particular date.



Adding a Next Action (See image on following page)

1. Click the down arrow to the right of the <u>Next Action</u> field and select an option from the customizable quick-pick list.

Prospect Manager: Abby Perkins # A	01519	
		i 🧾 Layouts 🔹 i 🔡 Settings 🔹 🗔 i 📖 🧰
Custom: 📁 Views 🕶 🌱 Filters 🕶	Next Date	8/26/2013 - Status Cold
Client/Organization	Next Action	Send Proposal
Abby Perkins		Initiate contact
Acme Corporation I	General	Send brochure
Acoustics Associates		Follow up on emailed brochure.
Aid Association for Lutherans	Client/Or	Send Proposal
Aid Association for Editherans	circity of	Sebadula Masting
Alzheimer's Association	Address	Schedule Meeting.
Amateur Athletic Union	City	Schedule Tasting
American Family Insurance	City	Tasting Follow up
Baptist Women's Hospital	St/Prov	Send Contract
Page Inc. 1		Secure Initial Deposit
Bass Inc.	Telephon	n Contract Follow up
Behavioral Services Of SW Florid	Eav	Secure 2nd Deposit
Bonita Springs Arts Alliance	a ax	Secure Final Deposit
CAMPUSO	للمستنعم	And the second s

### Setting a Prospect Status

- 1. From your Prospect Manager main screen, click the <u>Status</u> field, located towards the top right-hand side of the window.
- 2. Click the down arrow at the far right of the field to choose a status for the prospect from the customizable quick-pick list.

*Note: Prospects in Prospect Manager can be color-coded, grouped, and otherwise tracked based on a particular status.* 

C	Prospect Manager: Abby Perkins # A	01519							- = >
							📃 🛄 Layouts 🕶	🕴 😸 Settings <del>-</del>	
0	Custom: 📁 Views 🔻 🍟 Filters 🕶	Next Date	8/26/2013		• •	Status	Cold		
*	Client/Organization 🔶 ( 📥	Next Action	Send Proposal				Cold Cool		
▶	Abby Perkins [						Warm		
	Acme Corporation I	General	Viscellaneous				Very Warm		2
Г	Acoustics Associates	ſ					Hot		
	Aid Association for Lutherans	Client/Or	ganization Abby	/ Perkins			Expecting Payment Give Up		X
7	Alzheimer's Association	Address	1910	Garfer Drive	_			~~~~	

## **Establishing a Filter**

#### Is there any way I filter out certain records based on next actions or next action dates?

Absolutely! You can instantly (and temporarily) filter out certain records from your grid based on next actions, next action date, follow-up type, etc.

1. From your Prospect Manager screen, click the **Display Full Grid** button , located at the upper right-hand side of the screen.

Result: Your Prospect Manager opens in full-grid mode.

- 2. Click the **Quick Column Customizing** button , located to the left of the <u>Client/Organization</u> field. *Result:* A drop-down list of column headings displays.
- 3. Click the checkbox next to the desired field name, such as <u>Next Action</u> and/or <u>Next Date</u>.

🚳 Prospect Manager: Abby Perkins # A01519 –								
						📃 💷 Layouts 🕶	🗄 📷 Settings 🕶	
Custom Views -	Eilters	-						
	Tincers	- 	C1 /D	<b>T</b> 1 1	r.		D. (	D ist
Client/Organization	<b>_</b>	City	St/Prov	Telephone	Fax	Category	Reference	Description
Client/Organization		Naples	FL	(901) 489-1853	(901) 232-4894	Social	Refferal	Association Mem
Address		Naples	FL	(239) 261661 7	(239) 261-0067			
City		Ft. Myers	FL	(612) 544-8901	(612) 544-2928	Corporate	Referral	Association Mem
St/Prov	ans	Ft. Myers	FL	(612) 535-7220	(612) 535-1722	Religious	Yellow Pages	Association Mem
Postal		Ft. Myers	FL	(901) 565-0011	(901) 245-2915	Social	Refferal	Association Mem
County		Ft. Myers	FL	(901) 454-5522	(901) 542-6152	Social	Refferal	Association Mem
Country	e	Ft. Myers	FL	(612) 420-9242	(612) 420-9252	Corporate	Cold Contact	Association Mem
Account #		Naples	FL	(901) 227-9395	(901) 452-6243	Social	Refferal	Association Mem
Account ID		Ft. Myers	FL	(612) 272-9530	(612) 272-5500	Corporate	Walk In	Repeat Client
Telephone	Florid	Bonita Springs	FL	(901) 870-5080	(901) 561-3828	Social	Refferal	Association Mem
E Fax	e	Bonita Springs	FL	(901) 757-9768	(901) 264-5452	Social	Refferal	Association Mem
		Naples	FL	(612) 208-3060	(612) 208-0370	Corporate	Yellow Pages	VIP
Reference	n	Naples	FI	(901) 294-3060	(901) 533-8265	Social	Refferal	Association Mem
Description	· · · ·	Et Myers	FI	(612) 540-0234	(612) 540-0237	Corporate	Mailing	Associations
Sales Rep		Nanlos	ГС С1	(012) 340-0234	(012) 340-0237	Social	Pofforal	Associations
Tax Exempt		Naples	г. г.	(301) 733-3313	(301) 203-1021	Deliniaus	Vellew Dense	Association Mem
Exempt #		Napies	FL EI	(259) 444-0000	(239) 444-3737	Religious	Yellow Pages	Repeat Client
Email		Naples	FL	(901) 759-4320	(901) 583-5262	Social	Ketteral	Association Mem
Website		Sanibel	FL	(239) 472-0011	(239) 404-5678	Social	Walk In	VIP
Cellular		Ft. Myers	FL	(612) 835-5575	(612) 835-7467	Corporate	Referral	Repeat Client
Booked		Ft. Myers	FL	(612) 595-8970	(612) 595-8892	Corporate	Mailing	Chamber Membe
Revised	nthers	Estero	FL	(901) 488-5784	(901) 262-4351	Social	Refferal	Association Mem
Site Name		Ft. Myers	FL	(612) 378-4000	(612) 378-4040			
Site Address		Ft. Myers	FL	(612) 378-4000	(612) 378-4040	Corporate	Yellow Pages	Chamber Membe
Site City		Ft. Myers	FL	(612) 645-6446	(612) 898-5564	Corporate	Cold Contact	Association Mem
Site St/Prov		Naples	FL	(612) 437-0783	(612) 547-8979	Social	Yellow Pages	Repeat Client
Site Postal		Naples	FL	(218) 863-2911	(218) 863-3030	School	Repeat Client	VIP
Lovalty #			-	(C4.0) 744 CCE0	(C4 0) E 43 0333		1.1 m	n tor t
Next Date								
V Next Action	Accou	nts						🔣 🏤 🛸 🌮 📮
C Account								
Contact Type Preference	-							
to Contact Time Preference							Prospect N	lanager C
Master Account							-	

## Saving a Filter

- 1. Click the **Filters** button, located at the top left-hand side of the Prospect Manager screen.
- 2. Click **Custom**. *Result:* The Custom Filters window opens.
- 3. **[Optional]** Click the **Shared** button at the bottom of the Custom Filters window if you want this custom filter to be shared with other users on your Caterease network.

Note: The Local button, selected by default, means this filter will only be available on your computer.

- Click the Add Filter button .
   *Result:* A new filter is added to your list, with the default name New Filter.
- 5. Type a name for your new filter into the field.
- Click the Save Current Filter button *Result:* Your new filter is saved.

#### **Retrieving a Previously Saved Filter**

- 1. Click the **Filters** button, located at the upper left-hand side of your main Prospect Manager screen. *Result: The list of custom filters you have created display in a drop-down list.*
- 2. Select the filter from the drop-down list.

Prospect Manager: Abby P	erkins # A01519							- =
					🕴 🧮 Lay	/outs •	😼 Settings 🔹	
Custom: 🔟 Views 🕶 🌱 Fi	ilters 🔹 Next Dat	e 8/26/2013	1	👻 👻 Status 🤇	Cold			
Client/Organization	Prospects Only	rop	oosal					S
Abby Perkins Acme Corporation Acoustics Associates	My Next Actions T Brochure Follow-U	oday Ips	DUS			Directio	ons Notes Pict	ure
Aid Association for Lu	Clear Filter	on	Abby Perkins					
Alzheimer's Associatio	Custom		1910 Gayfer Driv	e				5
American Family Insurance	F St/Pr	v	Naples FL	Postal 38637	_			
Bass Inc.	F Telep	hone	(901) 489-1853					
Behavioral Services Of SW FI	lorid E		(001) 232-4804					
Bonita Springs Arts Alliance			(501) 252 4054					
CAM/USON Company	Email		abby@yahoo.co	n				
CCA West Collier Detention	- Veb	ite						
Chamber of Commerce	F							1
Col Chiropractic			and the second second	and the second s				- Contractor

## **Unit 20: Contact Manager**

Topics covered in this unit include:

Reviewing the Contact Manager Screen Adding Reminders/History Notes in Event Manager Adding a History Note While Sending a Contract Creating Reminders/History Notes in Account Manager Creating Auto Reminders Managing Current Reminders Viewing Reminders in a Calendar

# **Contact Manager**



Click to see Contact History notes for the current account

## The Contact Manager Module

The Caterease Contact Manager lets you keep track of all contact you have had with your clients. History notes and reminders can be viewed or created here, and various related prints and reports can be generated. The Contact Manager features are interwoven throughout the entire Caterease program. You can create history notes or reminders in Event Manager; you can create or even edit them in Account Manager; you can check all current reminders at any time using the corresponding button on the Tools sidebar at the left of the Caterease screen. However, the Contact Manager gives you a clean, easy way to manage all this data quickly.

## Adding Reminders through Event Manager

#### What is a reminder?

If you own the Caterease Contact Manager add-in, you can create reminders to yourself that will pop up on your screen and remind you to do things. These reminders can be created in several places throughout the program, including Event Manager, and can be set so that they only prompt one particular Caterease user or all users.

#### Adding a Reminder

- 1. Click the **New Reminder** button <sup>\*\*</sup>, located at the bottom right of the Event Manager screen.
- 2. Type a <u>Subject</u> for this reminder, or click the down arrow to the right of the field to select items from a quick-pick list.
- 3. Type a <u>Location</u> to associate with this reminder, or click the down arrow to the right of the field to select items from a quick-pick list.
- 4. **[Optional]** Assign a <u>Label</u> to the reminder by selecting the appropriate label from the quick-pick list.
- 5. Select a <u>Date</u> on which the reminder should appear. You can change months on the calendar by clicking the right or left arrows next to the name of the month, or holding your left mouse button down on the name of the month and dragging up or down.
- 6. Press [Enter].
- Enter an optional reminder <u>Time</u>. This time will be displayed with the reminder, but will not control what time the reminder appears (in other words, a reminder might say you need to do something at "12:00 PM," but it will appear when you first enter Caterease that day.)
- 8. Press [Enter].
- 9. Click the down arrow to the right of the <u>User</u> field to select the user who should respond to this reminder. Select "All Users" if you wish the reminder to be seen by everybody.
- 10. Click the down arrow to the right of Category and select an optional category for tracking the reminder. (Examples might include "Urgent," "Follow-Up," etc.)
- 11. Click the down arrow to the right of Contact and change, if desired, or just accept the default.
- 12. Click in the Message box and type the reminder action (i.e., what you will be reminded to do).
- 13. When finished, click **OK**.

Enter the date and time you wish to see the Reminder

6	Event Manager: S	unset Technologies	C Remind	ler: Sunset Technologies	х		- = x
				Settings •		gs 🕶 🗖 🕴 🖡	
-	Client/Organization	n Information					
	Client/Organizati	ion Sunset Techn	Subject	Sunset Technologies	-		\$2,755.00 🔍
	Address	1600 Third Str	Location	- Label None	-		\$436.80
	Telephone	(239) 261-661	Ctart	6/26/2012 - 11:17 AM A All day event	_		\$3,329.55
	Fax	(239) 261-006	Feed	6/26/2012			\$33.34
		- ·	End	0/20/2013 · II:22 AM .			28. 411
	🖽 Event 🛛 🖶 Sub	o-Event	🛛 Remi	nder Active 15 minutes - Show time as Busy	-	Closed	🖉 Allergy
	General Miscellar	neous	Client	Sunset Technologies	٩		
	Party Name	Craig's Birthday	Contact	Bland, Craig  - Link Event #: E00471	٩		
	Sales Rep	Kathy Wilson	Category		-	Tuesd	lay
Ð	Theme	Social	User	Administrator	-		<b>•</b>
	Category	Special Event	🧪 Messa	age		/24/2013	
	Booking Contact	Bland, Craig	I		<b>\</b>	/26/2013 (10:01	am)
Þ	Site Contact	Bland, Jared					
ι	Notar						
ľ	Crain in the main	anist of contract					
	Graig is the main	point or contact.					
				<u>O</u> K <u>C</u> an	cel		
			: 44 音。	2 R 📑 👥 😥 👔 : 😭 🛄 : P 😢 🖓 % 💹		- 8 🖻 🙆 🖻	

## Adding Contact History through Event Manager

#### What's a contact history note?

A Contact History Note is a written (or in this case, typed) record of some action you did or conversation you had related to a certain client. For example, if a customer calls to change the menu for their order, you may want to make a record of that call for future reference. Or if you make a few cold calls to try to build some business, you might note that as well. These history notes exist for your reference, can be referenced either on screen or in reports, and can be tracked either by category ("Menu Change," "Cold Call," etc.), or by customer name.

#### **Adding a History Note**

- 1. Click the **New Contact History Item** button *[20]*, located at the bottom of the Event Manager screen.
- 2. Type as desired in the <u>Comment</u> text box.
- 3. Click in the Subject, Date, Time, User, Category, or Contact field and edit as desired.
- 4. When finished, click **OK**.

Enter histor	y note under <b>Con</b>	nment				
💿 Event Manager: S	Sunset Technologies #	≠ E00471				- = x
				1: 00 e ur	ps 🕶 🗔 🕴	
-Client/Organizatio	n Information		t item: sunset Technologies	~		
Client/Organizat Address Telephone Fax Event Sul General Miscella	ion Sunset Techno 1600 Third Str Naples, FL 341 (239) 261-6617 (239) 261-0067 b-Event	Subject Date Category User	Sunset Technologies 6/26/2013  Time 11:19 AM	ngs •	Closed	\$2,755.00 \$436.80 \$137.75 \$3,329.55 \$33.34 Allergy
Party Name	Craig's Birthday	Contact	Bland, Qaig	<b></b>		
Sales Rep Theme Category Booking Contact Site Contact	Kathy Wilson Social Special Event Bland, Craig Bland, Jared	l		<b></b>	Tuesd	ay v am)
		Link to Eve	ent E00471	Cancel	6 🗃 🖗 🛤	
		Add Cor	atact History Note			

## Contact History: Auto-Save (See image on following page)

#### Am I able to keep a record of proposals and contracts I send via e-mail?

Yes! The Contact History window allows you to save contact history.

- 1. Click the **E-mail** button at the top of the Event Manager screen. *Note:* This button is also available from any Print Preview screen, and will automatically attach whatever print you are previewing (Contract, Billing Statement, etc.), to the outgoing e-mail.
- 2. In the <u>To...</u> field, type the e-mail address of the person you want to send your e-mail to, or click the **Address Book** button **(19)** to access a list of e-mail addresses for all contact people associated with this

Address Book button is to access a list of e-mail addresses for all contact people associated with this account.

*Note:* You can also access the list of e-mail addresses for this prospect by clicking the word To... at the left of the field. Note that this list is not your address book from Outlook; rather, it is the list of e-mail addresses you've entered into Caterease for the contact people of this e-mail recipient

- 3. [**Optiona**] In the <u>Cc</u> field, type the email address of the carbon copy recipient here (separate multiple recipient addresses by semicolons).
- 4. **[Optional]** In the <u>Bcc</u> field, type the email address of the blind carbon copy recipient here (separate multiple recipient addresses by semicolons).
- 5. In the <u>Subject</u>... field, type a subject for your e-mail, or click the down arrow to the right of the field to access a custom quick-pick list.
- 6. Click into the large white text block in the window.
- 7. Type a message as the body of your e-mail. *Note:* If you own the Marketing Tools package, you can use one of your custom merge letters as the body of your e-mail. These letters will automatically merge in information from the current prospect, including name, salutation, current date, etc.
- 8. [Optional] Format the text of your e-mail using the Format toolbar on your e-mail window.
- 9. **[Optional]** Click the **Attach** button at the top of the e-mail window and choose *File* to attach a file. Choose **Print** to attach a print.

*Note:* This step will open a standard Windows browser window, where you can select a file or print to attach to the e-mail. Attached files appear in the small pane at the bottom of the E-mail window.

10. Click the **Contact History** tab. You can elect to **Auto-Save E-mail** content and **Contact History Item Content** by clicking their respective checkboxes from the **Auto Save in Contact Manager** button



11. When finished, click Send.

Result: The e-mail is sent through your Outlook program, and any files you have attached are exported.

8		a 🔇 =		Your Event P	roposal - Message		_		×
	Messag	ge Conta	act History	Templates					*
	Save	Comment Category	Emailed o	lient "Your Event Prop utgoing	oosal" 👻 🚦	ð 🚺	-		
				Contact History			Auto Save Em	ail Content	
ſ		То	Craig@Suns	et.con		<ul> <li>Image: A state</li> </ul>	Auto Save Cor	ntact History I	tem Content
	-	Сс							
	Send	Bcc							
		Subject:	Your Event	Proposal					<b>-</b>
F	Regards John Sales Re 33 Rest	S, epresenta taurant & SEC URANT & LO	tive <i>Lounge</i>						

## **Creating Auto-Reminders**

#### What is an auto reminder?

Let's describe this with an example: say it is your company protocol when you book a new event that you always must get a confirmed guest count 48 hours in advance of the party. You could create an automatic reminder that says, "Call to confirm guest count," and have it automatically created whenever you book a new event. Furthermore, you can set this reminder to flag you "two days" before the event date, as necessary. You can even set reminders to prompt you a certain number of days from the date you book the party, rather than the event date itself.

#### **Accessing Auto-Reminders**

- 1. Click the **Contact Manager** button on the **Main** sidebar.
- 2. Click the Automatic Reminders Setup button *Q*, located at the lower right-hand side of the screen. *Note:* You may also access this feature from Administration > Options > Automatic Reminders Setup.

#### Adding an Auto-Reminder

- 1. Click the green plus sign at the top of the Automatic Reminders form.
- 2. Choose an action to trigger the creation of the reminder.
- 3. Set a date for the reminder to appear, relative to the Event Date, the Booked Date, or the Revised Date.
- 4. Enter optional reminder information, such as a time, category, or contact person.
- 5. Enter the text of the reminder that will prompt you.

Choose what action will create the auto	-reminder Choose when reminder should apped
	Set Auto Reminder 🛛 🗙
	Setup
	Create a new reminder when the following event occurs
	A New Event Is Booked
	Set the reminder date for 1 🗘 Day(s) 👻
	Before v the Event Date v
	Set the reminder for 15 minutes -
	prior to the time of 02:37 PM 🛟
	Reminder Detail
	Subject: Auto Reminder -
	Location: v
	Label: None 👻
	Category 🗸
	Contact For Contact
	Options 🛛 Confirm when created
	Specific user Administrator
	Message 🐺
	<u>QK</u> <u>C</u> ancel
Enter the	reminder text in the Message text box
### Inserting Merge Fields into an Auto-Reminder Message

Create a custom auto-reminder by adding dynamic merge fields into your message.

- 1. Click in the Message text box.
- 2. Click the **Insert Fields** button 💷 at the top right-hand side of the message window.
- 3. Click the plus sign to the left of a particular category of fields (e.g., Event Fields, Financial Fields, etc.). *Result: That category opens to show all related fields*.

*Note:* As an option, click the **Full Expand** button *to expand all categories of merge fields at once.* 

- 4. Select a field and insert it in one of the following ways:
- Double-click the selected field to drop it in the current cursor position (where your cursor is currently blinking).
- Hold your left mouse button down onto the desired field, drag it into any position in the text block, and release.
- Click the **Select** button to drop the field into the current cursor position.

Set Auto Reminder	Fields Explorer
Catura	😌 Select
Create a new reminder when the following even	Account Fields     Event Fields
A New Event Is Booked Set the reminder date for 1  Day(s Before  the Event Date Set the reminder for 15 minutes prior to the time of 01:58 PM  Date Reminder Detail Subject: Auto Reminder Location:	Financial Fields     Deposit Fields     Account User Defined Fields     Event User Defined Fields     Special Fields
Label: None	
Contact Booking Contact	
Options     Confirm when created    Specific user     Administrate	or
Message	
A deposit of [Dep.Amt] for Event # [Event.# [Dep.Due]	¥] is due on
[	<u>O</u> K <u>C</u> ancel

### **Managing Current Reminders**

### Viewing Current Reminders

- 1. Click the **Tools** sidebar on the left of the Caterease screen.
- 2. Click **Active Reminders**. These are the current reminders for the Caterease user who is currently logged into this machine.

### **Selecting Reminders**

- 1. Click any reminder on the Active Reminders form.
- 2. Click the **Select** button at the top of the form.
- 3. Choose to select the reminder using the following guidelines:
  - Into Account Manager This option will open Account Manager on the account associated with this reminder.
  - Into Event Manager This option will open Event Manager on the event that this reminder is linked to. If this option is not available when you click Select, this means that the highlighted reminder is not linked to any existing event.
  - Into Contact Manager This option opens Contact Manager and positions you on the account associated with this reminder.
  - *Into Prospect Manager*—This option opens Prospect Manager and positions you on the account associated with this reminder.
- 4. Click **Yes** to confirm your choice.

🔔 5 Reminders		_ >	ĸ
🎽 Print 🕶 🌈	Select •	→ Details	
Aid Asso	into Contact Manager		
Start tim	into Account Manager		
Subject	into Prospect Manager	Due in	
Ducks U	into Event Manager	5 days overdue	
Ladtech	into Guestrooms Manager	1 week overdue	
CAM/UL		1 week overdue	
Acoustics A	Associates Call Client	1 week overdue	
Aid Associa	ation for Lutherans	1 week overdue	
Dismiss <u>A</u> ll		Dismiss	
	_		
10 minutes		✓ <u>S</u> nooze	
Lizer Names	AU 11		

You may choose to Snooze, Dismiss, or Dismiss All reminders

If you are the Caterease administrator, you can choose whose reminders you see

### Viewing Reminders in a Calendar

### Can I see my reminders in a calendar display?

Absolutely! You can see reminders in a day-at-a-glance calendar, a week-at-a-glance, a custom work-week-at-a-glance or a month-at-a-glance display, just like you would in Outlook. In fact, you can synchronize your Caterease calendar display with your Outlook calendar instantly!

### **Displaying Reminders in Sub-Events**

- 1. Click the **Scheduler** button on the **Tools** sidebar group to open the Scheduler.
- 2. Click the **Display** button from the middle of the Scheduler window. Select **Reminders.**

### Grouping Reminders by User, Category or Other Detail

- 1. In the Reminders calendar, click the down arrow next to Group By, at the top left of the window.
- 2. Choose <u>User</u>, <u>Category</u> or other detail. Note: Administrators are able to view reminders for all users. If you are logged in as a specific user, only your reminders will appear in the calendar display.

#### Synchronizing with Outlook

- 1. In the Reminders calendar, right-click anywhere on the screen and select **Export/Synchronize to Outlook.**
- 2. Choose to export within a date range or a relative date range.
- 3. Choose to export Active Reminders Only, New Reminders Only, or both.
- 4. When finished making your selections, click **OK**.



# **Unit 21: Marketing Tools**

Topics covered in this unit include:

Accessing Marketing Tools Creating a New Merge Document Inserting Images into Merge Documents Inserting Tables into Merge Documents Inserting Dynamic Merge Tables

### **Using Marketing Tools**

### What do I need the Marketing Tools Package for?

The Caterease Marketing Tools package gives you the ability to create any number of dynamic merge letters, envelopes, and labels. In case you don't know what a merge letter is, it is basically this:

Dear (So-and-So), You have (a certain party) in (a certain room) at (a certain time) on (a certain date).

All of the information in parentheses would dynamically merge in data from specific orders. Therefore, one letter that you type one time will look completely unique for each separate order.

### **Adding Merge Documents**

- 1. Click the Marketing Tools button on the Setup sidebar along the left-hand side of your screen.
- 2. Click the Add Record button *I*, located on your Main Caterease toolbar at the top of the screen.
- 3. Type a name for your new document and press your [Enter] key.
- 4. Click in the main text block of the Marketing Tools form and type the body of your document as desired. Insert fields anywhere in your document using the following steps:
- 5. Place your cursor where you would like the merge field inserted.
- 6. Click the **Insert Merge Fields** button 🕎 , located at the top right of the Marketing Tools form.
- 7. Click the plus sign to the left of the group of merge fields you wish to access.
- 8. Select the field you want to insert, and either double-click it or drag it and drop it into your document.
- 9. Format your document's text using the **Format** toolbar at the top of your Caterease screen.

**Tip:** You can optionally insert tables anywhere in your letter by clicking the **Insert Merge Tables** button



### **Inserting Images into Merge Documents**

### Can I put our logo at the top of our custom merge documents?

You can put your logo – or any other image – anywhere you want! You can even choose to insert images as watermarks in the background of your print.

### **Inserting an Image**

- 1. Click in your document to place your cursor where you want the image to appear.
- 2. Right-click and select **Insert Image**. Alternatively, you may click the **Insert** button and select **Insert Image**.
- Browse to your image, select it, and click Open.
   Result: The selected image is inserted into your document.
   Note: As a default, the image is inserted as a "character" (see Attach Modes, below). This means that it will move as other text moves, and you can use the Format toolbar to align it (left, center, right), among other things.

### Changing the Attach Mode of an Image (See image on following page)

- 1. Right-click an image in your document. *Result:* A pop-up menu appears.
- 2. Select Attach Mode.
- 3. Choose from the following options:
  - As Character

This is the default mode, where the image acts as any other character in the document and moves and wraps with the text around it.

- **Relative to Paragraph Auto Wrap Left or Right** Attaches the image to a paragraph. Drag the image to any paragraph, and drag it left or right on the screen. If the image is closer to the right side of the page, text will wrap to its left (and vice versa).
- Relative to Paragraph Auto Wrap Left AND Right Attaches the image to a paragraph. Drag the image to any paragraph, and drag it left or right on the screen. Text will automatically wrap on both sides of the image.

#### • **Relative to Page - No Wrapping** Attaches the image to the page. You can drag the image to any position you want. Text will not wrap. **Nota:** Use this mode with a faded image to create a watermark effect. (You'll want to choose the

Note: Use this mode with a faded image to create a watermark effect. (You'll want to choose the "Behind Text" option, below).

## • **Relative to Page - Wrap Left and Right** Attaches the image to the page. You can drag the image to any position you want, and text will automatically wrap on both sides as necessary.

### • Behind Text/Under Text

Places the image behind the text or under the text on the page as you drag it. Use this in conjunction with "Relative to Page - No Wrapping " (above) to create a watermark effect. *Note: To select an image set "Behind Text," hold your* [*Ctrl*] *key down as you click the image.* 



Right-click image to change attach mode.

### Inserting Tables into Merge Documents (See image on following page)

### What if I want details in my letter to be organized into nice, straight rows and columns?

Just like in your favorite word processor, tables are incredibly useful for organizing information in Caterease Marketing Tools. Furthermore, you can use borderless tables to arrange information in straight rows and columns – all while keeping the document free of any graphic line work.

### **Inserting a Table**

- 1. Click in the document where you would like the table to be inserted.
- 2. Click the **Create Table** button , located on the **Home** ribbon tab at the top of the screen. *Result: The Insert Table window appears.*
- 3. Create a table by setting the following options:
  - Number of Columns Set the number of columns you want in your table.
  - Number of Rows

Set the number of rows you want in your table.

• Alignment

Select whether you want the table to appear on the left side of the page, in the center or on the right. *Note: If the width of your table is 100% (see Width, below), then the table will take up the entire width of the page.* 

• Border

Choose whether or not you want borders around the cells of your table. *Note:* Borders can be removed after the table has been inserted, if necessary.

• Width

Set the width for your table as a percentage of the page you are placing it on.

4. When finished, click **OK**.

*Result:* The table is inserted at the current position of your mouse pointer. *Note:* As an alternative, you can click *Tables* > *Create Table* button, move your mouse to indicate the

number of columns and rows you want in your table, then click again to create it.

### Modifying a Table

- 1. Click your cursor in the cell of the table at the point you want to make a modification (or highlight multiple cells).
- 2. Click a button in the toolbar located along the right side of the Marketing Tools form to optionally delete the table, split cells, combine cells, insert a row, delete a row, insert a column, delete a column, or add/remove borders.

Use the Quick Access Toolbar item "Tables" to create and modify tables



### **Inserting Dynamic Merge Tables**

### Can I include specific sub-event details on my custom prints?

Specific sub-event details, such as room and time information, menu items, staffing etc., can be inserted anywhere in your merge documents using powerful merge tables. You can choose what specific information appears where – even optionally nesting merge tables within other tables for a split-page or other creative design.

### **Inserting a Merge Table**

- 1. Click in a merge document to place your cursor where you want the merge table to be. *Note:* You can click inside other tables (see Inserting Tables on the previous page) to arrange tables side by side on a page.
- 2. Click the **Insert Merge Table** button **use** at the top of the Marketing Tools window.
- 3. Choose a specific merge table based on the following descriptions:

### Food/Service Items

Fields to choose from include item Name, Description (formatted or unformatted), Picture, Time, Category, Prep Area, Unit, Item ID, Acct Code, Comment, Cost, Qty, Total, Recipe (formatted or unformatted), Notes (formatted or unformatted), Modifications (formatted or unformatted), vendor, Price, Returned.

• Proposal Items

Fields to choose from include Name Descriptions (formatted or unformatted), Picture, Category, Time, Prep Area, Unit, Item ID, Acct Code, Comment, Cost, Price Qty, Total.

• Menu Items

Fields to choose from include Name, Description (formatted or unformatted), Recipe (formatted or unformatted), Picture, Type, Category, Prep Area, Unit, Item ID, Acct Code, Comment, Vendor, Cost, Price, Menu.

• Payments Made

Fields to choose from include payment Date, Amount, Pay Method, Card Type, Card Number, Comment, Expires.

• Deposits Due

Fields to choose from include Due Date, Due Amount, Comment, Paid, Pay Date, Pay Amount.

• Event Timeline

Fields to choose from include Date, Time, Item, Notes (formatted and unformatted), Category

• Scheduled Items

Fields to choose from include Date, Start, End, Setup, Tear Down, Name, Type, Category, Comment, Notes (formatted and unformatted), Picture.

• Shifts

Fields to choose from include Position, Date, Start, End, Hours, Uniform, Category, Comments, Price, Required, Booked, Confirmed, Total.

• Staffing

Fields to choose from include Employee, Position, Date, Start, End, Uniform, Category, Telephone, Cellular, Email, Confirmed, Confirmed On.

- Sub-Events
- Fields to choose from include sub-event Description, Type, Times, Date, Planned Guests, Actual Guests, Guaranteed Guests, Room, Setup Style, Site Name, Site Address, Site City, Site State/Prov, Site Directions (formatted or unformatted), Site Website, Room Charge, Delivery Charge, Comments (formatted or unformatted).

(Continued on next page.)

- **Food/Service Items Financial Summaries** Group totals of menu items grouped by item Type or item Category.
- **Proposal Items Financial Summaries** Group totals of menu items grouped by item Type or item Category.
- Summary Totals Financial Summaries List financial totals including Adjustment, Delivery Charge, Room Charge, Discount, Subtotal, Gratuity, Service Charge, First Tax, Second Tax, Third Tax, Total Tax, Total, Paid, Balance, Cost, Profit.



# **Unit 22: Using the Print Designer**

Topics covered in this unit include:

Accessing the Print Designer Adding a New Print Customizing the Header Customizing Text Blocks in a Print Formatting Food/Service Items in a Print Advanced Print Settings Using the Miscellaneous Prints Designer

### **Using the Print Designer**

### What is the Print Designer?

Caterease gives you the remarkable flexibility to modify or completely recreate your prints. You can rearrange data on a print, insert company logos or even add text in any font, color, or size. Any changes made to new or existing prints is done through the Caterease Print Designer.

### Accessing the Print Designer

- 1. Click the **Setup** sidebar area on the left-hand side of your screen.
- 2. Click the **Print Designer** button.

### Adding a New Print

- 1. Click the **Add Print** button, located at the top left-hand side of the Print Designer window. *Result:* A confirmation window opens.
- Click Yes to confirm your choice.
   *Result: The Select Print Layout window opens.*
- 3. Click a layout on the left-hand side of the window to select it.
- 4. Click **OK**.
- *Result:* A new print is added, and the <u>Title</u> field is highlighted for you to type in a new print title.
- 5. Type a title for your new print.
- 6. Press [Enter] to save your changes.

### **Customizing the Header**

- 1. Click the **Edit Header** button, located on the top right-hand side of the screen. *Note:* There are three separate panes within the header window. Each pane can be edited by following the steps below.
- 2. [**Optiona**] Stretch or shrink any pane by holding your left mouse button down on the inside frame and dragging it.

Note: You can also set all three panes to equal widths by clicking the Tools button and choosing Set

## Equal Widths .

- 3. Click on any pane and type as desired, using the toolbar at the top of the window to format text, to center or right-justify, etc.
- 4. [Optional] Insert images into the header, as described previously.
- 5. **[Optional]** Insert merge fields to dynamically merge information from the event, such as the event number, revision date, etc., as described below.
- 6. **[Optional]** Click the hyperlink field at the bottom of the header window and enter a URL (web address) to attach to this area of the print.

*Note:* When you *e*-mail this print, the recipient can click any part of this header and be sent to the designated web address.

### **Inserting Merge Fields**

- Type any text you want to act as a label for your merge field. Note: For example, you may want to identify the merge field for the person reading the print; i.e., "Revised Date:," "Party Name:," etc.
- 2. Click the **Insert Fields** button 🖳 located at the top right of the text window. *Result: The Fields Explorer window is displayed.*
- 3. Click the plus sign to the left of the group of merge fields you want to access. **Result:** That group expands, showing all related merge fields (e.g.., click the plus sign next to "Event Fields" to see event-specific merge fields).

*Note:* As an option, click the **Full Expand** button **a** the top of the Fields Explorer window to expand all categories of merge fields at once. See Appendix B for a comprehensive list of available merge fields.

4. Select the field you want to insert, and either double-click it or drag and drop it into the text window. *Result:* Double-clicking a merge field inserts it where the cursor currently resides; dragging and dropping a field allows you to place it anywhere.



*Élick the plus sign, select a merge field, and insert* 

### **Selecting Fields**

Click the down arrow at the right of a particular field (all fields located throughout the print in the Print Designer window).
 *Besult: A dram down list of options appears*

**Result:** A drop-down list of options appears.

2. Select a different field from the drop-down list of options. *Note:* Different sections of the various prints offer different field options. For example, each layout has a specific section where "sub-event" fields — time fields, room or site location information, etc. — are available.

### **Suppressing Sections**

- 1. Float your mouse pointer over a checkbox along the right of the Print Designer window. *Result:* A tooltip appears, identifying which section of the print that box corresponds to.
- 2. Enter a check in the box to suppress that section; remove the check to have that section appear. *Note: Certain checkboxes work in the reverse; when you click them they SHOW the corresponding details. Be sure to read the speed tip carefully.*

Add, delete or co	opy a print		1	Down a	rrows let	you change mer	ge f	ield: I	5			
								1				x
	a* a*   +€ +€   🔜 🗶 🛛	👌 Print Type 🗸 🍃	P Tools	Pre	view			1		😽 Sett	íngs 🕶	-2
	Invoice Contract Contract - Images Kitchen Detail Chef's Copy Contract with Staffing Contract - Narrative)		G + E		5		/	Fal	es / Cr Cr Edi	atering ontract it Header		•
	BEO	Client/Organizat	ion		Event Date	Telephone	Fax			Event #		
	Dual Column Contract	Address				Client/Organization	-	Cont	act	Guests		
	Custom Print	Party Name			Sales Rep	Address Address (Extended)		eaorv				
	Contrat en Francais Offsite Contract- E00027 Class Example	Edit Top Notes		Suppress		City, StProv Postal Full Address			🔲 Shov	v Allergy Ale	erts	
	Class example				Site	Fax						-
		Site Name		5	ite Address	Cellular Email						-
						Party Name						
		Description 1	уре	Start	End	Booking Contact Booking Tel		om	S	etup Style		
					Food/	Booking Fax Booking Cell					7	
		Format Name			N	Booking Email			Qty	Total		
						Booking Full Address Site Contact		o By	None			
					In	Site Tel	=					
					C) 10	Site Cell						
					Staffing	Site Email Site Full Address						
					C	Sales Rep						
						Reference						
						Category Pay Method						
		Billing Informatio	<u>on</u>	Daid		Event #		6	rd Numb	or (Hiddon)		
		Tax		Balance		PO # Account #		Exc	oires	er (Hidden)		
	Contract 4	Service Charge		None		Folio # Guests		No	ne			-
						PIn Guests					-	
						Act Guests Gtd Guests		J				
						Event Date						
						Booked					1	
						Revised Billing Client	-					1

Notes can be modified with rich-text formatting and merge fields

Checkboxes suppress entire sections

### Customizing Text Blocks in a Print (See image on next page)

### Can I type any text I want into my event prints?

In the Print Designer, there are several areas where you can simply type free-flowing text as desired. You can format this text any way you want, and even pepper it with dynamic merge fields that will automatically pull unique information from each event as you print.

### Customizing Text Blocks (Also applies to Bottom Notes and Footer sections.)

- Click the Edit Top Notes button. Result: The Top Notes window opens. Note: Also optionally click the Bottom Notes or Footer button to edit those sections.
- 2. Type into the text box as desired, optionally inserting merge fields and formatting the text as described previously.
- 3. When finished, click **Close**.



### Formatting Food/Service Items in a Print

### Can I control how my menu items appear on my prints?

You have a lot of control over the appearance of your items. First and foremost, you determine whether each print will show the detailed "description" of each item – complete with all of your rich-text formatting; or if you want only the name of each item to appear. Then, you can choose which other item details – price, cost, quantity, etc.-appears on the print. Finally, you can make some advanced choices, such as grouping or filtering your items, or hiding certain items on certain prints.

### Using the Food/Service Filter

- 1. Click the **Filter** button  $\checkmark$ , located to the right of the Menu selection, and choose which specific items should appear on this print, using the options outlined below:
  - **Exclude Items Without Quantities**: This checkbox at the top of the window causes this print to ignore any menu items in an event that do not have quantities associated with them.
  - **Type**: Choose (optionally) to only include items with a certain Type or Types (Food, Beverage, Liquor, etc.), or only items that do not have a certain Type or Types (using the Not Equals comparison).
  - **Category**: Choose (optionally) to include items with a certain Category or Categories, or only items that do not have a certain Category or Categories. *Note: This custom quick-pick list can be used to separate Appetizers from Entrees or Desserts or separate Beer and Wine from Liquor, etc.*
  - **Prep Area**: Choose (optionally) to only include items with a certain Prep Area or Prep Areas.
- 2. When finished, click **OK**.

### **Choosing a Format for Your Items**

- 1. Click the down arrow next to **Format** in the Food/Service Items section on the Print Designer screen. *Result:* A drop-down list of options appears.
- 2. Choose to include the name and description of menu items on the print, just the name, or just the description, a picture or the item, any modifications made to the item, a bar code, or notes. Click the down arrow to the right of the next field in the Food/Service Items section.
- 3. Choose to include any of the optional information from the drop-down list, or choose **None** to have nothing appear in this column on the print.
- 4. Repeat Steps 3 and 4 for the rest of the fields in the Food/Service Items section.

### **Grouping Menu Items**

- 1. Under the Food/Service Items area of the Print Designer, click the down arrow next to **Group By**. *Note: This option is only available on print layouts 1, 2 and 4.*
- 2. Select how you would like menu items grouped on the print by "Type," "Category," "Prep Area" or no grouping.

**Note:** Menu item "Type" is a hard-coded list consisting of the options "Food," "Beverage," "Liquor," "Equipment," "Labor," "Room" and "Other." The other two options ("Category" and "Prep Area") are custom quick-pick lists can you create through the **File > Setup** menu in the program.

#### Hiding Items on the Print

- On any print in your Print Designer, click the checkbox labeled Allow Food/Service Item Hiding, located midway down on the right.
   *Result:* Any menu item designated as "hidden" in an event will not appear on this print. Note: To see the label of a checkbox, float your mouse pointer over it without clicking.
- 2. Un-check the box to have hidden items display on the print.



Group food/service items as desired

### **Advanced Print Settings**

### What other things can I control on my prints?

You can translate your prints into a number of foreign languages, as well as into your own custom "English" translation – using your specific words and phrases! You can also have Caterease automatically record the date on which you generate each event print. And finally, once you're done designing your perfect custom print, you can simply copy it (*Professional version*) to make minor changes, if you want.

### **Translating a Print**

- 1. Click the down arrow labeled **Translate To** at the bottom right of the Print Designer.
- 2. Select a foreign language for this print, or choose English to apply alternative terms and labels to the print.

### **Selecting a Print Type**

- 1. Click the title of the print you want to identify on the left side of the Print Designer screen.
- 2. Click the down arrow next to **Print Type**, at the bottom right side of your Print Designer.
- 3. **Result:** A drop-down list of options appears.
- 4. Choose the appropriate print type for this print "Contract," "Invoice," "BEO," or "None," if this print is none of the above.

Note: Your program will optionally keep track of the date on which you generate these prints.

### **Copying a Print**

- 1. Click your right mouse button over any print title on the left-hand side of your Print Designer screen. *Result:* A pop-up menu appears.
- 2. Choose Copy Print. *Result:* A confirmation message appears.
- 3. Click **Yes** to confirm. **Result:** A new print — an exact duplicate of the original — is added, with your cursor blinking in the title.
- 4. Type a title for your new print and press [Enter].
- 5. Edit the new print as desired.

Subtotal	P	aid	Pay M	Pay Method		Card I	Number (Hidden)	1
Tax	B	Balance		Card Type		Expire	Expires	
Service Charg	e N	lone	Card H	Card Holder		None		
Total Value	Ν	lone	Signat	Signature		None	English	-
Payment	Paymer Payment Pmt Date Pmt Method None			ts Made None Nor			Spanish French German	
Edit Bottom No Edit Footer	ites 💌 🗖 Su	ppress 🔲 Time 8	& Page Counts		Print Ty Transla	/pe te To	Portuguese None None	

*Click the down arrow to change language translations* 

### Using the Miscellaneous Prints Designer

### Are there any other prints that I can modify?

The Miscellaneous Prints Designer allows you redesign the tops of various prints, including the Billing Statement in Account Manager and all sub-prints in Event Manager.

#### **Customizing Miscellaneous Prints**

- 1. Click the **Setup** Sidebar.
- 2. Click Miscellaneous Print Designer.
- 3. Click the down arrow at the top left of the window to choose a print.
- 4. Click the plus sign before any print category to see the prints in that category.
- 5. Select a print.
- 6. Modify using the Miscellaneous Print Designer tools of suppressing sections, rearranging fields, inserting merge fields, formatting text, etc.

Select a print		C	Click various down	n arrows to arrange data
Miscellaneous Print Designer				×
📔 🗶 🛛 🔪 Tools	<ul> <li>Preview</li> </ul>			😼 Settings 🔹 🗔
Account Manager Billing Statement  Event Manager Event Checklist Deliveries Payments Denocits	Title Billing Statemer	nt		Billing Statement
<ul> <li>Recipes</li> <li>Fancy Menu</li> <li>Details</li> </ul>	Client/Organization Address	,	Telephone Sales Rep	Fax Category
<ul> <li>Staffing</li> <li>Ingredients</li> <li>Required Items</li> <li>Production Sheet</li> <li>Event Costing Summary</li> <li>Vendor List</li> <li>Event Times</li> <li>Scheduled Tables</li> <li>Menu Manager</li> <li>Current Menu</li> <li>Menu Item Details</li> </ul>	Reference Edit Top Notes Edit Bottom Notes	Reference Suppress Suppress	Reference	Reference

Insert merge fields and format fonts in notes sections

# Unit 23: Adding Menus and Menu Items

Topics covered in this unit include:

Adding New Menus Adding Menu Items Creating Menu Packages

### **Adding New Menus**

### What is the Menu Manager?

The Caterease Menu Manager allows you to add a limitless number of menus and submenus to your program. You can name these anything you want, and rearrange them at any time into whatever order works best for you. Remember, these are food *and* service menus - meaning you should include any items you might be charging the customer for, including possibly *Equipment* items or *Room Fees*.

#### Adding a Menu

- 1. Access the Menu Manager by clicking the **Menu Manager** button on the **Setup** sidebar on the left-hand side of your screen.
- 2. To the right of the Menu Titles panel (along the left side of the Menu Manager), click the Add A New Menu button. A new menu will be added to the bottom of your list.
- 3. Type a name for your new menu and press your [Enter] key.
- 4. Drag your new menu to any position on the list by clicking and holding your left mouse button on your new menu title and then dragging and dropping it (drop by letting go of your left mouse button). You can make the menu a submenu of another menu if you hold your **[Shift]** key down as you drag it.
- 5. As an option, you can click the **Display Details** button and type a long title, add a digital picture, and enter a description for the menu.

Click the green plus	s sig	n to <b>Add New M</b> o	e <b>nu</b> Click to me	ove, add o	r remove mer	u item colum	ns to display		
🚳 Menu Manager: ALL M	ENUS		/				-		х
🕴 字 💞 🥃 🕴 All Menus S	Search	1	<b>*</b> •••			🕴 😽 Settings 🖥	• 🗔 🗄 🖬 🗸	1 🖷	j =
Menus	ф.	🔮 💼 📑 🔪					🔒 🔒 🕯	🏭   I	53
ALL MENUS		Custom: Views	▼ 💜 Filters ▼						<u>†</u>
Breakfast	∎"		1	Drice	Comment	Dran Araz	Catagony		
Breaks	豆			Price 621.05	Comment	Prep Area	Category	IΨ	
Beverage and Treats	÷			\$21.95		Hot Line	Dinner	2	
Light Side	<b>4</b> €	Markup	+	\$12.05		Vitaban	Prostfort	: 1Ψ	
Lunch Buttet	<b>▲</b> 든	V Price	ist	\$10.95		Kitchen	Dredkidst	βΨ	
Dackages	-ਵ	🔲 No Tax		\$6.05		Rar	Rear	T	
A/V Equip		No SC		\$50.00		Setup	Decoration	2	
Bar	ų <u>p</u>	Unit		\$25.00		Setup	Room rental		
Desserts		Comment	n	\$25.00		Setup	AV Equipment	R	
- Additional Charges		Prep Area	rkev	325.00		Hot Line	Dinner	14	
Setup		Category	ikey			Bar	Wine	T	
🕀 Luncheon		Menu Title				Hot Line	Dinner	Ĩ	
Hors D'Vres		Hide Inactive		\$17.95		Hot Line	Dinner	IΨ	
🕀 Dinner		Default Oty		317.55		Cold Pren	Dessert	IW I	
🛨 Dinner Buffet		Linked		\$2.95		Cold Prep	Dessert	IW I	
🕀 Wedding		Rounding		42.55		cold ricp	besser		
		Min Qty							
		Deliver							ור
		Item ID	rilled filet with fresh stea	med vegetal	bles				
		Vendor		5					
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		Inventory							
	~	In Stock							
		Web Order Group							
		URI							
CITE A		Bar Code							
		👿 Туре							
		Modified			D				
		Description Recipe	Label Notes Modifiers	Ingredients	Required Items	Package Items		‡₽	#

### **Adding Menu Items**

### Where do I click to add a new menu item?

The Menu Manager makes use of the main toolbars located at the top of your screen. As with adding anything in Caterease, you add menu items by clicking the green "plus sign" – located in this main toolbar.

### **Adding Items**

- 1. Access the Menu Manager by clicking the **Menu Manager** button on the **Setup** sidebar on the left-hand side of your screen.
- 2. In the left panel of the Menu Manager, click the title of the menu you want to add an item to. If accessing a sub-menu, click the plus sign to the left of the menu title.
- 3. Click the **Add Record** button, located in the main toolbar at the top of the screen, to add a blank line to the bottom of this menu. This button is identical to the **Add New Menu** button near the left panel of your form. Do not confuse them.
- 4. Type a Name for the new menu item. For more information on creating long descriptions of menu items, see *Menu Item Description*.
- 5. Press [Enter].
- 6. Type a Price for the new menu item, or click the down arrow to the right of this field to get assistance from the calculator.
- 7. Press your [Enter] key twice, until you get to the <u>Type</u> column.
- 8. Click the down arrow and choose a Type for the menu item. Your options include Food, Beverage, Liquor, Equipment, Labor, Room, or Other.
- 9. Hold your left mouse button down over the name of your new menu item.
- 10. Drag to any new position on the menu and let go of the mouse button.

🙆 Menu Manager: Desser	ts					- =	х
🕴 🎅 💞 🖕 🕴 All Menus	Search	1 <b>*</b> ···		1	😸 Settings 🕶 🛛 🗤		Ŧ
Menus	ţ.					- 	3
ALL MENUS	Ē	Custom: 🗾 Views 🕶 🌱 Filters 🕶				<b>=</b> 1	
Breakfast		* Name	Price	Comment	Prep Area	Category	
Beverage and Treats	Æ	Cheese Cake	\$2.95		Cold Prep	Dessert I	!4
Light Side	<u>، د</u>	Carrot Cake	\$2.95		Cold Prep	Dessert	/4
Lunch Buffet	ت ج	Fresh Baked Pie	\$2.95		Cold Prep	Dessert	/4
Modifiers		Vanilla Ice Cream	\$1.95		Cold Prep	Dessert	/Ψ
Packages	<u>-</u>	Chocolate Ice Cream	\$1.95		Cold Prep	Dessert	14
A/V Equip	ø	Rainbow Sherbet	\$1.95		Cold Prep	Dessert	!"
Bar		>			Cold Prep	Dessert	14
Additional Charges Setup Luncheon Hors D'Vres Dinner Dinner Buffet Wedding		H4 44 4 7 of 7 → → → → × < 4			/		•
		Description Recipe Label Notes Modifiers I	ngredients	Required Items Pac	sge Items	1	

Click the green plus sign to Add New Item

<sup>/</sup> Be careful that each item has the appropriate "Type."

### Creating Menu Packages (See image on following page)

- 1. Access the Menu Manager by clicking the **Menu Manager** button on the **Setup** sidebar on the left-hand side of your screen.
- 2. In your Menu Manager, click the **Package Items** tab, located at the bottom right-hand side of the screen.
- 3. Click the **Packages** tab on the left-hand side of your screen.
- 4. To add a new package, click the **Add New Item** button from the top of the screen.
- 5. Type the name of the new package into the <u>Name</u> field and press [Tab] or [Enter].
- 6. Type a Price into the <u>Price</u> field and press [Tab] or [Enter].
- Click the Select Items button , located on the lower right-hand side of the screen. *Result: The Select Menu Items window displays.*
- 8. Select a menu title.
- 9. From the available menus, select a single menu item or multiple items by following the guidelines below:
  - Click an item to select it.
  - Hold your left mouse button down and drag your cursor over multiple items.
  - Click one item, hold the [Ctrl] key down on your keyboard, and drag your cursor over multiple items.
  - Click one item, hold the [Ctrl] key down on your keyboard, and click other items.
- 10. Drop items from the selection screen into your menu package, using the following guidelines
  - Double-click a single item in the Select Menu Items window.
  - Hold your mouse button down on one individual item (without moving) for a half second and drag that item from the Select Menu Items window into your Menu Manager screen, dropping it on top of your "menu package" item.
  - Hold your left mouse button down on a group of selected items and drag and drop them into the Menu Manager screen.
  - Click the **Select Items** button or the **OK** button to select all highlighted items into the menu package.
- 11. Remove the price from each of the individual items in your package.



Retrieve items by dragging and dropping, or clicking OK or Select Items

# Unit 24: Establishing System Security

Topics covered in this unit include:

Accessing System Security Creating an Administrative Password Adding Users & Passwords Establishing Individual Access Rights Creating User Groups

### **Setting up Security**

#### What exactly does "enabling security" mean?

Before you add users and passwords, you must first enable your overall system security. First, a single mouse click will enable password protection in your program. Without protection enabled, you could add all the users and security levels your little heart desired but they would be ignored by the program. Next you should assign a main system (or administrative) password. You can then prevent users from accessing certain information or performing certain tasks unless they are privy to this main password.

### **Enabling Security**

- 1. Click the Security button from the Administration ribbon tab at the top of the screen.
- 2. From the Administrator Settings screen, click the Enable System Security checkbox.
- 3. Click the Administrator Settings button.
- 4. From the Administrator Settings screen, click the ellipse button to set up an administrative password.
- 5. Click Yes at the Enter new Main Caterease Password? prompt.
- 6. Carefully type a password to serve as your main system (administrative) password (minimum of four characters).
- 7. Press your **[Tab]** key and retype the password into the <u>Again</u> field to verify.
- 8. **[Optional]** Add a picture to the Picture block by clicking your right mouse button into the field and then selecting **Load From File**. Browse to the desired image and double-click to select it.
- 9. When finished, click **OK**.

Caterease Se	ecurity	х
		🔀 Settings 🕶 🗔
General Secur	ity Settings	
Enable Sys	tem Security Directory	Administrator Settings
Enable Use Enable Use	er Event Locking er Account Locking	Enable User Prospect Locking
Groups & Use	ers	
Groups	Group Name	Ē
Users	Caterease Users	
		₽
	1	, ]

### **Adding Users and Passwords**

- 1. Click the Add User button (green plus sign), located at the top right of the Caterease Security screen.
- 2. Enter a User Name for the new user.
- 3. **[Tab]** or press **[Enter]** to move to the next field.
- 4. Enter and confirm a password as described above. *Note: Passwords must have a minimum of four characters (numbers and/or letters), and are not casesensitive.*
- 5. [**Optional**] Enter the name of this user as it exists in your Windows Active Directory into the <u>Active</u> <u>Directory Name</u> field.

*Note:* Users with Active Directory Names will not need to log into Caterease separately; after they log into Windows, they will automatically be recognized when loading Caterease, and their specific program permissions will be established.

- 6. **[Optional]** Click the box labeled Is a Sales Representative, and enter a Sales Rep name if you would like this user's name to be included on your list of Sales Representatives. In addition, you can choose a color to be associated with this sales rep when color-coding options are used within the program.
- 7. [**Optional**] Enter the telephone, cellular number, and e-mail address of the sales rep into the fields provided.
- 8. [**Optional**] Click the Notes text block and enter any relevant notes associated with this user or his/her program access level.
- 9. **[Optional]** Add a picture to the Picture block by clicking your right mouse button into the field and then selecting **Load From File**. Browse to the desired image and double-click to select it.
- 10. Click the **Security** tab on the left side of New User window and establish security settings for this new user.
- 11. **[Optional]** Click the **Groups** tab and select the security groups to which this user belongs. *Note:* You can also select users into groups, as opposed to selecting groups for users. A user's security settings take priority over the group's; if a user is specifically allowed to or prohibited from doing something, that will determine access.
- 12. When finished, click **OK**.

User Security D	Details: New User			x			
General	General Information						
Groups	User Name	New Us	er				
	Password	Un-Assi	gned				
	Active Directory Nam	2					
[	Sales Representative						
	Is A Sales Representative						
	Sales Rep Name						
	Color			• …			
	Telephone	() -					
	Cellular	() -					
	Email						
	Notes Picture						
			<u>0</u> K	<u>C</u> ancel			

### **Establishing Individual Access Rights**

- 1. Access the Caterease Security window.
- 2. Click the **Users** tab on the left side of the window. *Result:* A list of currently established users is displayed.
- 3. Verify that <u>Enable System Security</u> (top left of the window) is selected. *Note:* Users will not be required to log into Caterease, and security settings will not take effect if the <u>Enable System Security</u> checkbox is not checked.
- 4. In the list of users, click the name of the one you wish to edit to select it.
- 5. Click the User Details button [12], located on the right-hand side of the User Security Details window. *Result: The User Security Details window for the currently select user appears.*
- 6. Click the Security tab on the left side of the User Security Details window. Result: A list of all possible security settings, separated into categories, is displayed. Note: By default, every new user you add is a member of the user group "Caterease Users," and therefore automatically inherits the permissions established in that group. Any setting listed with a red font indicates a setting that is disabled for this user because of a group (such as "Caterease Users) he belongs to. (These settings can be superseded by allowing/disallowing features here for the individual user.)
- Click the small plus sign to the left of any category heading to expand that category of settings, or click the small minus sign button to collapse a category.
   *Note:* As an option you can right-click anywhere in the Security tab and choose Expand All to expand all categories of settings.
- 8. Click any checkbox consecutively to insert a green check mark, a red X, or a yellow dash to respectively allow the user permission to perform that option, or deny permission, or defer to the permissions of the group that user is in (see #10, below).
- 9. [Optional] Click the Check All Security Settings button ..., Uncheck All Security Settings button or Clear All Security Settings button to edit all user security settings simultaneously.
- 10. **[Optional]** Click the **Show Security Details** button to view a window as you scroll through the settings, to help you identify which group or user's settings apply.



### **Creating User Groups**

- 1. Access the Caterease Security window.
- Click the Groups tab on the left-hand side of the window. Result: A list of currently established security groups is displayed. Note: All users in the program will belong to the default group of "Caterease Users." While you can edit permissions in this group and affect all users, you cannot delete the group entirely.
- 3. Click the **Add Group** button on the right-hand side of the window. *Result:* A New Group window appears.
- 4. Enter a <u>Group Name</u> for the new group.
- 5. Enter a descriptive <u>Category</u>.
- 6. [Optional] Enter detailed <u>Notes</u> pertaining to the group or its specific security settings.
- 7. Click the **Security** tab on the left-hand side of the New Group window. *Result:* A list of all possible security settings, separated into categories, is displayed.
- 8. Click the small plus sign to the left of any category heading to expand that category of settings, or click a small minus sign button to collapse a category. *Note:* As an option you can right-click anywhere in the **Security** tab and choose **Expand All** to expand all categories of settings.
- 9. Click any checkbox consecutively to insert a green check mark, a red X, or a yellow dash to respectively allow the user permission to perform that option, or deny permission, or defer to the permissions of other security groups that user is in.

*Note:* As a default all settings are neutral, meaning access to a feature.

- 10. [Optional] Click the Check All Security Settings button , Uncheck All Security Settings button
   or Clear All Security Settings button to edit all user security settings simultaneously.
- 11. **[Optional]** Click the **Users** tab on the left side of the window and click the **Select Users** button to select users for this group.

Note: You can also select groups for a user, as opposed to selecting users for a group.

12. When finished, click **OK** to close the New Group window.

Caterease Security	🙆 Group Security	y Details: New Group	x
	General	General Information	7 - 4
General Security Se Carlot Security Se	t Security Users	Group Name New Group Category	tor
Enable User Eve		Notes	cing
Groups & Users			
Users Cate			
		<u> </u>	

# **Unit 25: General Program Setup**

Topics covered in this unit include:

Customizing Quickpick Lists Customizing Name Fields Establishing Required Fields Creating User Defined Fields Setting New Booking Defaults Establishing Default Tax Rates Using a Default Deposit Schedule Configuring Global Settings Customizing the Scratch Pad Adding to the Site Locations Database Creating Banquet Rooms/Setup Styles Assigning Setup Styles/Capacities/Breakout Rooms Blocking Banquet Rooms
## Adding Items to the Quickpick Lists

#### What is a Quickpick list?

Throughout your Caterease program there are several drop-down or "quickpick" lists to assist you in data entry. These lists exist to save you the tedium of double entry and to keep your data consistent. For example, rather than having to type the event theme "Wedding Reception" multiple times (and risk accidental misspellings), you can simply pick it from your event theme quick-pick list. These lists are completely under your control, and can be edited by you at any time.

#### Selecting a Quickpick List

- 1. Access the Setup Quickpick Lists form by clicking the **Quickpicks** button on the **Setup** sidebar on the left-hand side of your screen.
- 2. Click the sideways triangle to the left of any quick-pick category (left-hand side of screen) to see the corresponding lists.
- 3. Click the desired quick-pick list to select it.

#### Adding a Quickpick Item

- 1. Click the Add New Item button, located at the top right of the Setup Quick-Pick Lists form.
- 2. Type a name for your new quick-pick item. *Note:* Some lists allow you to choose a default color for items. Grids in the program (and the Event Scheduler display) can be color-coded based on these lists.
- 3. When finished, click Close.

#### **Editing Existing Quickpick Items**

- 1. Click any quick-pick item to select it.
- 2. Type as desired. *Note: See above note regarding color.*
- 3. When finished, click **Close**.

Click the expand button to display the options.



## **Customizing Name Fields**

#### Can I change the names of the various fields?

If you do not like the term "Sub-Event," or if you'd rather use the field "Category" to track some specific piece of event information, either of these can be renamed through your program's Global Settings.

- 1. Click **Administration** > **General** at the top left of your Caterease screen.
- 2. Choose Customize Names.
- 3. Click in the <u>General</u>, <u>Financial</u>s, or <u>Event</u>s category fields and type a new name as desired.
- 4. When finished, click **OK**.



## **Creating Required Fields**

#### How do I make sure my sales people enter the information I need?

A perfect way to add structure to your sales people's data-entry process is by using the Required Fields feature. This tool allows you to designate certain fields in Event Manager as required, meaning an event cannot be saved unless this information is entered. Optional required fields include general event fields such as Event Theme, Event Date, guest counts, etc., as well as sub-event fields such as times, room information, or off-site location information.

#### **Designating Fields as Required**

- 1. Click the Administration ribbon tab at the top of the screen.
- 2. Click the **General** button and choose **Required Fields**. *Result: The Required Fields window displays.*
- 3. Click any checkbox on the *Events* or *Sub-Event* tab to designate the corresponding field as required. *Note:* As an option, you can click your right mouse button anywhere on either tab to choose Check All Fields (or even Clear All Fields).
- 4. Click OK.

Result: The window will close, saving your changes.

**Note:** The next time you open Event Manager, any fields you designated as required will be highlighted in red on your screen. If your Event Manager was open when you established your required fields, you will need to close it and reopen it for the changes to take effect.



Click any field to make it required, or right click and choose Check All Fields

## **Creating User-Defined Fields**

#### What is a Use- Defined Field and what is its purpose?

A User-Defined Field is one that is created by the user of the software. If there is a need for a new information field that does not exist in the Caterease database, the user may create the field. These fields are trackable and can be utilized in various reports, contracts, and letters. The user may create up to 15 fields in the Account Manager, 15 fields in the Event Manager, 10 in the Sub-Events, and 10 in the Guestrooms Manager.

#### How to Create User-Defined Fields

- 1. Click the Administration ribbon tab at the top of the screen.
- 2. Click the Lists button and choose User Defined Fields.
- 3. Click on the tab reflecting which area of the program you want to create fields for: *Accounts* for your Account Manager, *Events* for your Event Manager, *Sub-Events* for the Sub-Event display or *Guestrooms* if you own the Guestrooms Manager.
- 4. Click on the first available field and type in your description of that field
- 5. Click the arrow under <u>Type</u> to format the new field using the following guidelines:
  - *Text* alpha-numeric format
  - *Phone* formatted for phone number entry
  - Number formatted for numbers only
  - *Currency*—formatted for currency
  - *Date* formatted for date entry
  - *Time*-formatted for time entry
- 6. When finished, click **OK**.

Accounts				
Contacts		Name Of Field	Туре	
Contacts	1	Client Birthday	Date	
Events	2	NA	Text	
Sub-Eivents	3	NA	Text 🔻	
Menu Items	4	NA	Text 🔻	
Employees	5	NA	Text 🔻	
ite Locations	6	NA	Text 🔻	
Guestrooms	7	NA	Text 👻	
Desciedase	8	NA	Text 👻	
Heminders	9	NA	Text 👻	
ontact History	10	NA	Text 👻	
Vendors	11	NA	Tex	
	12	NA	Texµt ▼	
	13	NA	Tekt 🔻	
	14	NA	Text -	
	15	NA	Text	

Unassigned fields have "NA"

Date fields will have corresponding drop-down calendars.

## **Inputting User-Defined Fields**

#### Where can I use these new fields I've created?

User-defined fields can be added to your program in a variety of places – your Event Manager, your Sub-Event form, your Account Manager or your Guest Rooms Manager (for hotels, motels, inns, etc.) You can even insert user-defined fields in your various prints, from contracts and invoices to merge letters and other prints.

#### Adding User-Defined Fields to your Screen

- 1. Click your right mouse button on the user-defined fields area of the screen.
- 2. Select Customize. A small window pops up with available user defined fields.
- 3. Hold your left mouse button down on one of the available fields.
- 4. Drag it and drop it onto your screen.

#### Other areas where user defined fields can be utilized

You can display user-defined fields anywhere on your various event prints, including inserting them as merge fields in the following places: top notes and bottom notes sections in all contracts and invoices, top notes in all sub-prints, and anywhere in the body of your merge letters. See documentation on your Print Designer for more details.

User-Defined Fields can have corresponding drop-down calendars, calculators or quick-pick lists.



## **Creating New Booking Defaults**

#### What are new booking defaults?

New Booking Defaults are all about preventing you from typing the same thing more than once. For example, if most of your accounts are within your city limits, you can make that city the default for every new client you book. That way, most of the time you will not have to type a city when you add a new account to your program. New Booking Defaults exist for several areas of your program - accounts, events, employees, or guest rooms.

#### **Entering Default Information**

- 1. Click the **Administration** ribbon tab at the top of the screen.
- 2. Click the General button and choose New Booking Defaults.
- 3. At the top of the New Booking Defaults form, select the tab that has the information you want to enter or change.
- 4. Click in a field and type as desired or click in a quick-pick field, click the down arrow at the right of a field and select a default from the list.
- 5. Press your **[Enter]** key to move to the next field.
- 6. When finished, click **OK** to close the form and save your changes.

Accounts	Address	*	
Contacts	City	Naples	
_	State	FL	
Events	Postal		
Employees	County		
Sub-Events	Country	U.S.A.	
-	Miscellaneous		
Prospects	Reference		
Guestrooms	Description		
	Sales Rep		
	Category		
	Other Tel Type		

Select your most commonly used event information from the quick-pick lists

Select the desired tab to change related default settings

## Setting Tax/Service Charge Defaults

#### What are default tax/service charge rates?

Your default tax and service charge rates are the rates that will automatically apply to each new order you book in Caterease. While you can certainly change tax and service charge rates at any time within a particular order, you obviously don't want to be doing that every single time you book a new event. So it's important to make sure your default tax and service charge rates are set correctly.

#### **Establishing Tax & Service Charge Rates**

- 1. Click the Administration ribbon tab at the top of the screen.
- 2. Click the General button and choose Tax & Service Charge Rates.
- 3. Enter a new tax rate for your <u>Food</u> items by typing numbers as desired, or by clicking the up or down arrows next to the tax rate to increase or decrease the rate one percentage point, respectively.
- 4. Press your [Enter] or [Tab] key to move to the next field.
- 5. Repeat as desired for all three optional tax rates and your service charge rates.
- 6. If you wish to apply a tax to your service charge and/or gratuity rates, click the checkbox beside the words Tax Grat or Tax Serv Chg.
- 7. [**Optional**] Click the checkbox labeled <u>At New Rate for Tax Grat</u> or <u>Tax Serv Chg</u>. *Note:* Use this feature only if you wish to tax your gratuity or service charge rate at a rate that is different from your current tax rate(s).
- 8. To make all new orders in your program default to tax exempt, click the checkbox next to the words Tax Exempt at the bottom left of the form.
- 9. When finished, click the **OK** button at the bottom right of the form to close the form and save your changes.

Change names of tax columns with "Customize Names" Make a new tax schedule					
Default Tax & Service Charge Rates	×				
	→ Tax Schedules				
Enter As Percentage (10.250 = 10.25%)	Primary Schedule Collier County				
First Second Third Gratuity At New Bate Serv Ch	Tax Serv Chg				
0ther: 7 ¢ 0 ¢ 0 ¢ 0 ¢ 16					
Tax Exempt Additional Adjust	ments				
Tax Exempt Subtotal					
Exempt #:					
Expires:	-				
Third					
Gratuity					
Service Charge	<b>—</b>				
	$\backslash$				
Set Tax Exempt status as a default setting Add misc. numbers	Check to tax service charge				

Check to tax gratuity

## Using a Default Deposit Schedule

#### What if I have a deposit schedule I use for all of my events?

You have the option in Caterease of creating a unique default deposit schedule to be used for any event. Then you simply open the Deposits window in any event and click one button, and the program automatically creates a deposit schedule based on the rules you've established.

#### **Creating a Default Deposit Schedule**

- 1. Click the **Options** button on the **Administration** ribbon tab at the top of the screen.
- 2. Select **Deposit Schedule**. *Result:* The Default Deposit Schedule window displays.
- Click the Add Record button at the top of the window.
   *Result:* A new record is added to the deposit schedule.
   *Note:* This new record will have certain default values that you can change using the steps below.
- 4. Set the number of days, weeks, or months out you want this deposit to be due using the first two fields on the right-hand side of this window (the Details section on the right-hand side of the window). *Note:* Achieve this by typing a number or using the up and down arrows in the first field and clicking the down arrow next to the second field and selecting Days, Weeks, or Months.
- 5. In the second row of fields, choose whether this deposit will be due before or after the event date or the date on which the event is booked.
- 6. In the third row, determine whether the amount of the deposit should be calculated as a percentage of the event totals or as a whole dollar amount, as follows:
  - If setting a percentage of the event totals, use the fields in the fourth row to set the percentage amount (first field) and the total to use as the basis.

*Note:* You would probably use the "Remaining balance due" option for all subsequent deposits after the first one. For example, a possible first deposit might be "50% of the Total balance due," but subsequent deposits might be based on the balance that remains. In other words, "Total balance due" represents the total amount of sales for that event, regardless of whether any deposits have been received.

- If setting a whole dollar amount, use the field in the fifth row to set that dollar amount either by typing into the field or clicking the down arrow to access the drop-down calculator.
- 7. Repeat to create additional deposits.
- 8. Click **Close** to close the window and save your changes.

Default Deposit Schedule							x
e" e" 🔎							e* e*
Conditional Group	Sum	imary Of Depo	sits				
Condition	#	Deposit	When	Fro	m What		
All Events	1	\$500.00	1 Week	(s) Aft	er The Booke	d Date	
	2	50%	1 Week	(s) Bef	ore The Event	t Date	
	3	100%	1 Day(s	) Bef	ore The Event	t Date	
	H4 44	I ← 1 of 3 →	* **	•			Þ
	Dep					_	
	Set t	the deposit dat	e for	1 .	Week(s)	*	
	/	After 🔹	the	Booked Da	te	Ŧ	
	and	make the dep	osit	An Amoun	t	Ŧ	of
		50 (%)	of the	Total		*	balance
	[	\$500.00 -					due
	Not Arra	e: inge scheduled	l deposite	s chronolog	gically		
					<u>О</u> К		<u>C</u> ancel

## **Creating a Default Event Timeline**

#### How can I create a default timeline to keep track of a reoccurring schedule?

One of the most valuable tools in planning and executing an event is a detailed schedule. Follow the steps below to create a default timeline.

- 1. Click Administration > Lists > Default Timeline Items.
- 2. To add a new default timeline, click the Add New Timeline button , located on the left-hand side of the screen.
- 3. Click **Yes** to confirm your choice. *Result:* A new, empty field is added.
- 4. Type the name of the new timeline into the highlighted field.
- 5. Press [Enter] to save your timeline.

🞯 Default Timeline Item	IS				X
			: 53	Settings 🕶	
Off Premise Prep	đ	* Item	Category	Time	đ
Wedding Reception		> Pull Dry Storage	Back of House		=
General Event	<u> </u>	Load Equipment	Back of House		
		Equipment Delivery	Back of House		
	*=	Completion of Cook Tent Setup	Back of House		
		Completion of Main Tent Setup	Back of House		
		×			
		Notes			
			<u>O</u> K	Cance	el

#### Viewing an Existing Timeline

- 1. Click the **Event Timeline** button, located on the lower right-hand side of the Event Manager screen.
- 2. Click the **View or Select from Default Timeline Items** button, located on the top right-hand side of the window.
- 1. To add an existing timeline item to a particular event, click the desired timeline category from the lefthand pane of the window to select it.

**Result:** All timelines which have been added to the category you selected will display.

2. Select an item or items you would like to retrieve and click OK.

#### Adding an Event Timeline

1. Click the **Event Timeline** button, located on the lower right-hand side of the Event Manager screen.

- 2. To add a new timeline to an event, click the **Add A New Timeline** button, located on the right-hand side of the Event Timeline window.
- 3. Type the time the timeline item is due into the <u>Time</u> field. Alternatively, you may use the up and down arrows to select a time.
- 4. Type a description of the timeline item into the <u>Timeline Item</u> field.
- 5. Select a Category (Front of House, Back of House, etc.), by clicking the drop-down list to the right of the <u>Category</u> field to indicate who is responsible for completing the timeline item
- 6. To add notes related to the timeline item, click the **Show Timeline Item Notes** button , located on the right-hand side of the Event Timeline window.
- 7. [Optional] Type notes into the text block as desired
- 8. After you have set your timeline, click the **Save** button, located at the top of your screen.

#### **Printing an Event Timeline**

- 1. With your event open in Event Manager, click the bottom half of the **Prints** button from the **Home** ribbon tab at the top of the screen.
- 2. Click Event Subprints.
- 3. Choose **Event Timeline**.
- 4. Click the **Print** button at the top of the Print Preview screen to send the print to a printer.

- 🗐 📾 🛃		Ev	ent Timeline			
Preview Contact Hist	ory					
Print Setup PDF	E Export Email Attach	Whole Page Page Width Multiple Pages	Navigatio	n Th <u>u</u> mbnail <u>V</u> iew	Settings	
Print/Export	Tools	Zoom	Navigation	Preview	Windows	
	Flave +			Event Ti	meline	
	Client/Organization Salassa/Lau Wedding Reception	Event Date 9/4/2013 (Wed)	Booking Contact Denise Salassa	Site Contact Denise Denise	Event # E00184	
	Address 3600 Plymouth Rd., Ft. Myers, FL 55	5305	Telephone (941) 555-2938	Theme Wedding Reception	Guests 110 (Act)	
	Party Name Salassa/Lau Wedding Reception	Theme Wedding Reception	Category Group Sales	Sales Rep Roxanne M	. Mc Namer	
	Time Event Time Item		Category	Туре		
	Wednesday, September 04, 2013           12:00 am         Dinner Buffet - End T           5:00 pm         Guests Arrive           5:00 pm         Dinner Buffet - Bar T           5:00 pm         Dinner Buffet - Start	ïme ime Time	Customer	Event Time Timeline Tim Event Time Event Time	le	
	6:30 pm First Dance 6:45 pm Father/Daughter Danc 8:00 pm Dinner Buffet - Servir	e ng Time	Customer Customer	Timeline Tim Timeline Tim Event Time	ne ne	

## **Global Settings: Managers Tab**

#### What are "global settings"?

This screen allows you to make certain global changes to your program which will affect all users on your network.

## Accessing the Global Settings Managers tab

1. Click **Administration > Settings > Global Settings** at the top of the screen and click the **Managers** tab.

View/Edit Caterea	ise Global Settings	x
	 þ	Default Settings
Regional	Event Manager	
Fields	+ Default Guaranteed Guests From Planned	1
Managers	Use Gtd Guests To Determine Guest Count	<b>V</b>
Miscellaneous	Auto-Close Event After Invoice	V
wiscenarieous	Auto-Close Event Upon Final Payment	
Advanced	Set "Closed" Status When Auto-Closing Event	
Conflicts	Disable Keyboard Input For Room Selection	
Data	Display Currency Symbol In Event Prints	<b>V</b>
E	Suppress Zeros In Event Prints	V
Event Value	Disable Subevent Date Validation	
Pings	Prompt For Status Change After Payment	
	Enable Quick Item Insert	V
	Discounts	
	Apply Gratuity After Discount	
	Apply Statuty Arter Discount	7
	Apply Tax After Discount	<b>V</b>
	Account Manager	
	Use Contact "First" + "Last" When Copying	
	Numbering Prefixes	
	Event #	E
	Account #	A
	Proposal #	P
	Log #	R
	Employee #	E
L		Cancel
	<u> <u> </u></u>	

#### **Available Options**

#### Default Guaranteed Guests From Planned

This option causes Caterease to default an event's Guaranteed Guest count to a certain percentage of the Planned Guest number. Click the plus sign to the left of this option to set the default percentage.

#### Default Percent

Sets the percentage for the default Guaranteed guest count (see above). Use the up or down arrow button to increase or decrease the percentage, respectively.

#### Use Guaranteed Guests to Determine Guest Counts

With this option selected, any event prints that show the general guest count, as opposed to specifically the Actual, Planned, or Guaranteed counts, will show the Guaranteed number if it is higher than the Actual number. Without this selected, the general Guest field shows the Actual count if there is one or, if not, the Planned Count.

#### Use Guaranteed Guests in Qty Linking

If you have any menu items with quantities linked to the guest count of your party, this setting will link those quantities to the Guaranteed guest count, as opposed to the Actual (or planned if there is no Actual count), as the default.

#### Automatically Set Print Dates

When you preview a print of a contract, invoice, or BEO, Caterease will automatically put the current date in the corresponding <u>Event Specific Date</u> field, if this option is checked.

#### Auto-Close Event After Invoice

Click the plus sign to the left of Automatically Set Print Dates if you wish to close events after an invoice has been generated. You can then deny certain users access to closed events (see Security Settings).

#### Disable Keyboard Input For Room Selection

Click this checkbox to require users to pick room names from their list rather than typing them by hand. Click it again to allow them to type room names by hand.

#### Auto Close Event Upon Final Payment

This setting will cause an event to be closed when a payment is posted that brings its balance due to \$0. Closed events can optionally be locked for various users through the program's Security features.

#### Notify Upon Payment Method Changes

With this option selected, each time you post a payment to an event that has a different payment method from the event's default payment (selected on the Miscellaneous tab in Event Manager), you will prompted and asked if you want the event's payment method to be updated.

#### Set Closed Status when Auto-Closing Event

With this option selected, Caterease will automatically set the event status as Closed whenever you autoclose an event.

#### Disable Keyboard Input for Room Selection

Click this checkbox to require users to pick room names from their list of rooms rather than typing them by hand.

#### Display Currency Symbol In Contracts

This option causes the local currency symbol (\$ in America) to print next to the totals in the financial summary section of contracts and BEO's.

#### Suppress Zeros in Event Print

Click this checkbox to suppress the zero in items that have no quantity set and the \$0.00 on items that have no price in Invoice, Contacts, and Marketing Tools documents.

#### Disable Sub-Event Date Validation

Whenever you change an event date in Event Manager, the date(s) of your sub-event(s) are updated automatically. If you check this option, that sub-event date validation will be disabled, meaning any change to an event date will have no effect on its sub-events.

#### Prompt for Status Change after Payment

When you post a payment to an event, you most likely want the status of that event to be Definite. With this option checked, Caterease will prompt you if you post a payment to an event that is not Definite, and will even automatically change the status for you, if desired.

#### Enable Quick Item Insert

This setting is available in the Professional version. With this option selected, the user is able to use the down arrow on the Item Name tab to access a list of commonly used menu items.

#### Apply Gratuity after Discount

With this option selected, any discount you set in Event Manager using the Apply Discount tool will be applied prior to the gratuity being calculated for the event.

#### Apply Service Charge After Discount

With this option selected, service charge for an event will not be applied until any discount you might have set using the Apply Discount tool has been calculated. For example, an event with a total of \$1000 and a 10% discount will have service charge applied to the discounted total of \$900.

#### Apply Tax After Discount

With this option selected, tax for an event will not be applied until any discount you might have set using the Apply Discount tool has been calculated.

## Use Contact First and Last When Copying

This setting is for your Account Manager. In Account Manager, you can copy a contact person's name, address, phone, etc., to the client so you don't have to type that information more than once. With this option selected, that copy will be in the format of First Name Last Name, as opposed to Last Name First Name.

#### Numbering Prefixes

Here you can change the default prefixes of numbers assigned to all new events, accounts, proposals, etc., by entering up to three alternative characters (numbers, letters, or symbols).

## **Global Settings: Fields Tab**

#### What are "global settings"?

This screen allows you to make certain global changes to your program which will affect all users on your Caterease network. Specifically, the Fields tab allows you to rename certain fields in the program to better suit your company's needs. Options are listed below.

#### Accessing the Global Settings Fields Tab

- 1. Click Administration > Settings > Global Settings at the top of the screen.
- 2. Click the **Fields** tab at the top of the form.



#### **Available Options**

Time Fields

You can rename six of the time fields used in Event Manager. You, as the end user, can determine which of these time fields are displayed on your Event Manager screen.

#### CPG Calculation

This setting allows you to determine which financial totals should be used when calculating the cost per guest of your events. Options include food totals, liquor, beverages, equipment, labor, room, and other fees, as well as any additional adjustments you make in the event's tax/service charge window.

#### Members/Non-Members

Here you can rename these additional guest fields. Examples include Adults and Children, Vegetarian and Non-Vegetarian, etc.

#### Inverse Relation

By default, the Members and Non-Members guest count fields have an inverse relationship. That is, if a guest does not fall into one of those categories, he must fall into the other. (With this relationship, the most common name change to these fields is "Adults" and "Children" - if you're not one, you must be the other.) For example, if there are 100 guests at a party and you enter 60 into the Members field, Non-members will default to 40.

#### Link to Actual

With this checkbox selected along with the one above, the inverse relationship extends back to the "Actual" guest count. Using the example above, if you then changed the Non-Members number to 45, the Actual guest count would automatically update to 105. With this option disabled, any changes to the Members/Non-Members fields will not affect the Actual guest count.

#### Name/Government Number

Use this field to change the name of the government ID number (called Social Security # by default).

#### Format

Here you can establish the format for the government number field in the program- whether numbers, letters, or other characters (dashes, periods) are permitted or even required

## Setting up the Scratch Pad

#### What is a Scratch Pad?

The concept behind your Scratch Pad is that you should be able to insert commonly used text throughout the program with one mouse click rather than typing the same stuff over and over. To that end, you can create a Scratch Pad with all of your normal comments, special requests, setup notes, etc., and even separate them into various categories to make locating the right notes easier.

#### Setting Up the Scratch Pad

- 1. Click the **Administration** ribbon tab at the top of the screen.
- 2. Click the Lists button and choose Scratch Pad.
- 3. Click the Add Record button, located directly beside the list of categories in the panel on the left.
- 4. Type a name for your new category. Categories are used to break your Scratch Pad up and make locating certain notes easier. Examples might include "Setup Notes," "Equipment," "Special Requests," etc.
- 5. Press your **[Enter]** key.
- 6. Click in the large white text block on the right of the Scratch Pad Setup form and type notes for this category as desired.
- 7. Format your scratch pad text using the Format toolbar located at the top of the screen.

Scratch Pad Setup		- = X
		🚼 Settings 🕶 🕞
Categories		Scratch Pad Comments
General Setup Notes Equipment Wedding Notes Account Notes Plating Instructions	ອີ <b>ເ</b> ເມີ ເມີ ເມີ ເມີ ເມີ ເ	Enter in commonly used text to be pulled into any text editor throughout the program.

Add any number of categories to organize your Scratch Pad

Click into the text block and type commonly used text

## **Using the Site Location Database**

#### What is a Site Location Database?

If you do any off-premise functions, the Site Location Database can save you lots of time in needless repetitive typing. You can enter a location into this database - its description, address, directions, etc. - and from that point on you will merely have to retrieve this information rather than type it all over again from event to event.

#### Accessing the Site Location Database

- 1. Click the Administration ribbon tab at the top of the screen.
- 2. Click the Venues button and choose Site Location Database.

#### Adding a New Site Location

- 1. Click the **Add New Record** button (green plus sign), located on the main toolbar at the top of the Caterease screen.
- 2. Type a name for the new location into the Name field and press your [Enter] key.
- 3. Type an <u>Address</u>, <u>City</u>, <u>State</u>, <u>Zip</u>, <u>Telephone</u>, <u>Fax number</u> and <u>Website</u> for the location, if desired, pressing [**Enter**] or [**Tab**] after each one.
- 4. Click the down arrow at the right side of the <u>Category</u> field and select a category for your location. This field is optional, of course, and can be used for tracking your site locations.
- 5. Click in the <u>Picture</u> field and add a digital picture of your location, if desired, by clicking your right mouse button and selecting **Load From File**.
- 6. Click in the <u>Description</u> text box at the bottom of the display and type as desired to add a more detailed description of the location. This text can be formatted using the **Format** toolbar at the top of your Caterease display.
- 7. Click in the **Notes** tab and type any notes specific to this location (or use your Scratch Pad to insert any existing notes into the field).
- 8. Click the **Directions** tab and type specific directions to the location. This text can also be formatted using the **Format** toolbar at the top of your Caterease screen.

Site Location Database: Cambier Park			- = x
Site Location Database: Cambier Park          Custom:       Views •       * Filters •         Name       *       *         Cambier Park       F.G.C.U. Library       Holiday Inn Downtown         Holiday Inn Downtown       Museum       #	General Name Address City St/Prov Telephone Fax Category Website Tax Name	Cambier Park 735 8th St S Naples FL Postal 34102 (239) 595-0550 (239) 595-0551 Outdoor ~ www.cambier.com	- C X
•	Notes Dir	ections	

Tabs to add Notes or Directions

## Adding Banquet Rooms and Available Setup Styles (See image on following page)

#### What information will Caterease need about our banquet rooms?

There are a couple of things to think about when you're adding banquet rooms to Caterease. First of all, you need to add the basic information: a name for the room, perhaps a category it might fit into for tracking purposes, a default diagram (if you are using that facet of the program) and maybe a default room charge. Secondly, you need to tell Caterease which setup styles apply to this banquet room, what the maximum capacities are, and what other rooms might be breakouts of this particular room. (This second topic will be discussed on the following page.)

#### **Adding Banquet Rooms**

- 1. Click the Administration ribbon tab at the top of the screen.
- 2. Click the Venues button and choose Banquet Rooms Setup.
- 3. Click the **Add Room** button on the top of the form. *Note:* You can also optionally add multiple locations for your rooms, and even drag and drop rooms from one location to another. Locations are a particularly convenient way to organize rooms in your program's Event Scheduler (see later section).
- 4. Type a name for your new room.
- Optionally click the Room Details button into a dd a <u>Category</u>, <u>Room Charge</u>, Room Size, background <u>Color</u> (for Event Scheduler) and default <u>Diagram</u> for your room. *Note: The <u>Category</u> of a room can be used to track that banquet room. Examples might include "Ballroom," "Meeting Space," etc.*
- 6. [Optional] Click the Notes tab to add Notes about the banquet room.
- 7. Optionally add a digital picture of your new setup style by clicking the **Picture** tab, clicking your right mouse button and selecting **Load From File**.
- 8. When finished, close the Room Details window.

#### Adding Setup Styles to the Default Setup Styles List

- 1. Click the **Administration** ribbon tab at the top of the screen.
- 2. Click the Venues button and choose Setup Styles.
- 3. At the top right of the Setup Styles form, click the Add New Setup Style button. *Note: If you are using the interface with Room Viewer, you may want to click the Add Room Viewer*

*Setup Style* button *for automatically populate this list with styles your diagramming program will recognize.* 

- 4. Type a name for the new setup style.
- 5. Optionally click in the *Notes* text window at the bottom of the Setup Styles form, and type any notes that pertain to your new setup style.
- 6. Optionally add a digital picture of your new setup style by clicking the **Picture** tab, clicking your right mouse button, and selecting **Load From File**.
- 7. When finished, close the Setup Style Details window.

Banquet Rooms Setup				Х	
i Location: 💣 📑 🕴 Room: 🚅 📑		😽 Settings 🕶 🛛			
Location		Ocean Room	า		
Ballrooms		Setup Styles			
* Room		Setup Style	Capacity		
> Ocean ····		Theatre	300		
Sand		Cocktail	150		
Sun		Reception	150		
Sea		Banquet	210		
Sand-Sun		Rounds	210		
Sun-Sea					
Meeting					
Sunset Rooms		Proskout Poor		_	
Room		Dieakout Door	115	EN	
Terrace		Sand		-1-8	
Royal Palm		Sup			
Sea Dats		San			
	Þ	Sand-Sun			
		Sun-Sea			
		3011-368			

Click the green plus sign to add a new room

## **Assigning Setup Styles and Capacities**

#### Didn't we already talk about adding setup styles on the previous page?

The previous page deals with creating your default list of setup styles – all setup styles that would ever be used in any room. This page discusses selecting particular setup styles that apply to particular rooms, as well as entering the maximum capacity of guests for each setup style.

#### Selecting Setup styles and Capacities

- 1. Click the Administration ribbon tab at the top of the screen.
- 2. Click the Venues button and choose Banquet Rooms Setup.
- 3. On the left side of the Banquet Rooms Setup window, select the desired banquet room.
- 4. At the right of the display, click the **Select Setup Style** button.
- 5. Highlight any setup style(s) that apply to the selected room.
- 6. Click the **Select Setup Styles** button to add the selected setup styles to your banquet room.
- 7. Click in the <u>Capacity</u> field beside each setup style on the **Banquet Rooms Setup** tab and type a maximum capacity for the selected room. If you desire, you can click the down arrow at the right of the Capacity column and use the available calculator to determine a maximum capacity.

#### **Establishing Breakout Rooms**

- 1. On the left-hand side of the Banquet Rooms Setup window, select the desired banquet room.
- 2. At the lower right of the display, click the Select Breakout Rooms button.
- 3. Highlight any banquet room(s) that are breakouts of the selected room. For example, if you have a *Ballroom ABC*, then its breakout rooms might be *Ballroom A*, *Ballroom B*, *Ballroom C*, *Ballroom A-B* and *Ballroom B-C* (all possible rooms that can be formed by "breaking" the large ballroom apart).
- 4. Click the Select Banquet Rooms button to add the selected breakout rooms to your selected room.



Setup Styles/Capacities/Breakouts reflect currently selected room

"Breakout Rooms" are smaller parts of the currently selected room

## **Banquet Room Blocking**

#### What is the purpose of Banquet Room Blocking?

Banquet room blocking allows you to block a function room without the need of booking an entire order.

#### Adding a Room Blocking

- 1. Click the **Administration** ribbon tab at the top of the screen.
- 2. Click the Venues button and choose Banquet Rooms Blocking.
- 3. Click the green plus sign button to add a new blocking. Choose either *Day Of The Week* to apply room blocking on that day every week, or *Specific Date* for one-time only blockings.
- 4. Enter the <u>Time Range</u> you would like to block the room.
- 5. Click the down arrow to select the room you would like blocked. Choose *All Rooms* to block the entire facility or Specific Room to select a certain room (choose from the drop-down list).
- 6. [**Optional**] Type in the reason for blocking in the <u>Comments</u> field.
- 7. [**Optional**] Select a color to associate with the room-blocking.
- 8. Click **OK** when finished.
- 9. Repeat process for additional room blockings.

Select Blocking Type	ng Type Enter Date Range OR Enter Time Range				ge
	Banquet Room I	Banquet Room Block Blocking Type Day Of Week Specific Date	Every Day	×	
	LL ROOMS	🖻 Range	Start Finish	* *	
		Time Range			
		● All Day ○ Within Times	From To	* * *	
		Room To Block			
		Ill Rooms O Specific Room		-	
		Miscellaneous			
		Comments	¥		Close
			<u> </u>	ancel	

# Unit 26: The Backstage Tab

Topics covered in this unit include:

The Information Tab The Dashboard Recent Activities Support Instant Messaging

## Using the Backstage Tab

#### What is a "Backstage" Tab?

You may not be familiar with the term "backstage, "but you know the concept. In Microsoft Office products such as Word or Excel, the backstage ("File") tab allows you to print, as well as offering various options such as a list of most recently edited documents or files. In Caterease, the **Backstage** tab gives you access to many exciting tools, including: Information; Dashboard (Professional version only); Recent; Support; and Messages.

#### Information

This tab automatically updates from the Caterease website, and offers such information as latest news about the program, introductions to new features and even access to handy video tips.

#### Dashboard

This tab offers a quick-access view of what is going on with your company. Various style graphs can be displayed to show current event activity, accounts receivable or even contacts made by your Caterease team. Separate information into groups (to determine, for example, which rep has the most A/R, or how many outgoing phone calls or emails have been logged), and even drill down into each group for more information. A grid at the bottom of the tab offers more details about the results, as well.



#### Recent

This tab shows a list of all events that have been recently edited by the current user. Double-click on any event to retrieve it into Event Manager.



Click the plus sign to view the details

#### Support

This tab allows you to download such documents as our User License, Maintenance Agreement or even various user guides. In addition, you can email our HelpDesk directly from here, or access their phone number.

#### Messages

This tab gives you the exciting opportunity to send user-to-user instant messages, so you can quickly share important information with the rest of your Caterease team!

Ha hy Ha V	Select Reports Display Administr	Caterease ation Help		
Information	Instant Messages	<u>Mark Un-Mark</u> Del	lete	
Dashboard	Message History	User View: EVERYONE	~	
Recent	Incoming Messages	Kathy Wilson John Smith	Туре:	Outgoing
Support	(Adr	ainistrator to John Smith) - Read Roxanne M. Mc Namer Administrator	From: To:	Administrator Jo Ann Mulnix
Messages	C	ould you please let him know I'm in mee(EVERYONE day, and I'll get back to him after 5?	Sent: Read:	(Mon) 2/13/2012 - 01:38 pm (Mon) 2/13/2012 - 01:38 pm
	(Mon) 2/13/2012 - 01:34 pm John Smith	(John Smith to Administrator) - Read sider It done.		for you to reach out with him next week as you guys had discussed.
	(Mon) 2/13/2012 - 01:38 pm Jo Ann Mulnix Ino Schr	(Jo Ann Mulnix to Administrator) - Read Liced you changed the menu for my East High rol party. Does Ed want me to follow up at all?		
	(Adi	inistrator to Jo Ann Mulnib) - Read (Mon) 2/13/2012 - 0138 pm No - he's good. I created a reminder for you to reach out with him next week as you gups had discussed.		
			- <b>-</b>	
	New Message			
	Send To: None selected	* Serv	a	

To delete a message, click on the message and click the Delete button

# Unit 27: Backing Up Data and Managing Deleted Events

Topics covered in this unit include:

Performing a Backup Saving Backups Remotely Archiving Your Events Tracking Deleted Events

## Performing a Backup

#### How often should I backup data?

A backup of your program's data should be done every single workday. If the morning has been busy, you might want to run a backup at lunchtime and again at quitting time. These backups may never be needed. Think of them as an insurance policy against data loss or corruption. If something happens to your computer's hard drive or if you suffer data corruption, a backup can be quickly restored. The procedure described here backs up your data onto your Caterease server's hard drive. You may want to use a zip drive, a write-able CD or a tape to store data remotely in case of hard-drive failure.

#### **Running a Backup**

- 1. Click the **Backup Data** button on the **System** sidebar.
- 2. Click **Backup** at the top left of the form, if it is not already selected.
- 3. Click **OK**. The backup will automatically be done. The Backup file will be named starting with BU and followed by numbers which denote the year, month, and day, i.e.: BU2013-06-26.

#### E-mailing a Backup

- 1. Click the **Backup Data** button on the **System** sidebar.
- 2. Select a backup from your list of recent backups.
- 3. Select Tools Email Backup as Zip File.
- 4. Enter the e-mail address in the <u>Send To</u> field.
- 5. Enter the body of the e-mail in the <u>Message</u> window. The name, address and phone number of your company will be automatically added to the bottom of your message.
- 6. Click Send.

						х
Backup	Restore				_≥т	ools -
Backup Log						
Backup	Day	Done On	Done By	Comment	Vers	
2013-06-26	Wed	6/26/2013 (01:30 pm	Administrator	June 26	6-56	
013-06-18	Tue	6/18/2013 (05:19 pm	Administrator	June 18	6-52	

List of previously run backups

## **Backing Up Your Backup**

#### What happens if my server's hard drive fails?

You might have noticed the Caterease backup is automatically saved on the hard drive of your Caterease server (or on your machine if you are not using a network). There is the possibility that your server's hard drive could melt down. Considering that all of the data of your entire business operation is located there, this could be a major disaster. It is therefore prudent to save your backup to some external location as well as on your server. You could save to a CD, to a zip drive or to a tape. (Bear in mind, however, that if you choose to use a tape backup, make sure that the backup includes **ALL** files and *not just those that have been modified*.)

#### **Other Practical Alternatives**

You might also e-mail your backup to your home or you could save it across your office network to another computer. The chances that two computers would fail at the same time are slim. Getting your backup to another location entirely in case of fire is another logical consideration.

#### How Often Should You Backup Your Backup?

This depends on the volume of business. How long would it take you to recoup a week's worth of lost data? We recommend creating a secondary backup no less often than once a week. Daily would be ideal.

#### How is an Alternative Backup Performed?

- 1. Run your normal backup (see previous page).
- 2. If your Backup Files window automatically closes, click the Backup Data button again to reopen it.
- 3. Click on the backup file you just created to select it.
- 4. Click on the **Tools** button there will be a drop down menu displayed with Delete Backup(s), Save Backup As Zip File, Email Backup as Zip File.
- 5. Select Save Backup File As Zip File.
- 6. On the Save As window, type in a File name, and click **Save**.



Click and choose location to save a copy of your backup

## **Archiving Your Events**

This feature allows you to archive old events so they are not part of your everyday database.

- 1. From the **Administration** tab, click the **Archive** button.
- 2. Select Archive Events.
- 3. Select a <u>Date Range</u> by choosing the option Less Than Or Equal To or Within Date Range.
- 4. If selecting Within Date Range, click the down arrow and choose a date from the drop-down calendar. All events prior to this date (and matching the options you choose below) will be archived.
- 5. Click under **Options** > **Exclude Status** to suppress events with a status of Definite, Tentative, Prospective, Closed, Cancelled.
- 6. **Only Events with Zero Balances**-Select this option to archive events only if they have zero balances (i.e., they do not owe money).
- 7. **Only Closed Events**-Select this option to only archive events for which you have entered Closed dates in Event Manager.
- 8. Click **OK** to generate the query. (Note: You will be prompted to run a Database Refresh.)

Archive Events			х
Set Parameters			
Date Range			
<ul> <li>Less Than Or Equal To</li> <li>Within Date Range</li> </ul>	5/1/2013	▼ thru	5/1/2013 -
Options			
Exclude Status			
None selected			<b>*</b>
<ul> <li>Only Events w/Zero Balances</li> <li>Only Closed Events</li> </ul>			
		<u>O</u> K	<u>C</u> ancel

## Tracking Deleted Events (See image on following page.)

#### I thought when I deleted an event it was "gone"?

Deleted events are indeed removed from your program's live data. You will no longer find them in Event Manager, in your Event Scheduler, in any queries or on any reports. The Deleted Events feature, however, functions like the Recycle Bin in your Windows operating system: Any events you delete will remain in your Deleted Events window and can even be restored (if you have the Professional version). Once you remove an event from your Deleted Events window, it is then gone for good.

#### **Accessing Deleted Events**

- 1. Click the **System** sidebar group on the left side of your main screen.
- 2. Click **Deleted Events**.

#### **Finding Specific Events**

- 1. Sort the list of deleted events by clicking any column heading.
- 2. Use the Incremental Search tool, located at the top left of the Deleted Events window, to quickly locate an event.

#### Restoring Deleted Events (Professional version only)

- 1. Click a specific event to select it, or hold your [Ctrl] key down to highlight multiple events.
- 2. Click the **Tools** button at the top of the Deleted Events widow.
- 3. Select **Restore Selected Event(s)**.
- 4. Click **Yes** to confirm. *Note: If* you have chosen to restore only one event, you will be asked if you want to retrieve it into Event *Manager.*

#### **Removing Deleted Events**

- 1. Click one or more events to select them.
- 2. Click the **Tools** button at the top of the Deleted Events window.
- 3. Select Remove Selected Event(s). <u>WARNING: Clicking "Yes" on this message (Step 4, below) will PERMANENTLY remove these</u> <u>events from your database.</u>
- 4. If you want to permanently remove the selected events from your database, click **Yes**.

#### Deleted Events is in the System Sidebar Group

## Select Events and Click **Tools** > **Restore Selected Events**

27/2012 2:33:0       PM       Cancelled       Administrator       E00481       Tentative       F.G.C.U       Remove Selected Ev         27/2012 1:10:8       PM       Cancelled       Administrator       E00480       Tentative       Sunset Technologies         27/2012 12:2:3:40       PM       Cancelled       Administrator       E00476       Tentative       Sunset Technologies         27/2012 12:0:2:42       PM       Cancelled       Administrator       E00476       Tentative       Sunset Technologies         27/2012 11:0:2:42       PM       Cancelled       Administrator       E00477       9/20/2012       Tentative       Ladtech         27/2012 11:0:18       AM       Cancelled       Administrator       E00475       Tentative       Sunset Technologies         27/2012 11:2:147       AM       Cancelled       Administrator       E00477       9/20/2012       Tentative       New Account         27/2012 11:2:147       AM       Cancelled       Administrator       E00470       Tentative       Sunset Technologies         27/2012 9:39:20       AM       Cancelled       Administrator       E00470       Tentative       Sunset Technologies         27/2012 9:49:20       Am       Cancelled       Administrator       E00468
27/2012 1:10-8 PMCancelledAdministratorE00480TentativeSunset Technologies27/2012 12:0:40 PMCancelledAdministratorE00476TentativeSunset Technologies27/2012 12:0:40 PMCancelledAdministratorE00476TentativeSunset Technologies27/2012 12:0:40 PMCancelledAdministratorE004779/20/2012TentativeLadtech27/2012 11:0:18 AMCancelledAdministratorE00475TentativeSunset Technologies27/2012 11:2:147 AMCancelledAdministratorE00470TentativeNew Account27/2012 11:2:147 AMCancelledAdministratorE00471TentativeNew Account27/2012 9:50:25 AMCancelledAdministratorE004707/13/2012TentativeSunset Technologies27/2012 9:49:20 AMCancelledAdministratorE004707/13/2012TentativeSunset Technologies27/2012 9:49:20 AMCancelledAdministratorE004707/13/2012TentativeSunset Technologies27/2012 9:49:20 AMCancelledAdministratorE00467TentativeSunset Technologies27/2012 9:49:20 AMCancelledAdministratorE00466TentativeSunset Technologies27/2012 9:49:20 AMCancelledAdministratorE00465TentativeSunset Technologies27/2012 9:49:20 AMCancelledAdministratorE00465TentativeSunset Technologies22/2012 4:20:54 PMCancelledAdministrator
27/2012 12:25:40 PMCancelledAdministratorE00478TentativeSunset Technologies27/2012 12:02:46 PMCancelledAdministratorE00476TentativeSunset Technologies27/2012 12:02:42 PMCancelledAdministratorE004779/20/2012TentativeLadtech27/2012 11:02:42 PMCancelledAdministratorE00475TentativeSunset Technologies27/2012 11:21:47 AMCancelledAdministratorE00475TentativeNew Account27/2012 11:21:47 AMCancelledAdministratorE00471TentativeNew Account27/2012 9:50:25 AMCancelledAdministratorE00470TentativeSunset Technologies27/2012 9:49:20 AMCancelledAdministratorE00470TentativeSunset Technologies27/2012 9:49:20 AMCancelledAdministratorE00470TentativeSunset Technologies27/2012 9:49:20 AMCancelledAdministratorE00467TentativeSunset Technologies27/2012 9:49:20 AMCancelledAdministratorE00467TentativeSunset Technologies27/2012 9:49:20 AMCancelledAdministratorE00466TentativeSunset Technologies27/2012 9:49:20 AMCancelledAdministratorE00466TentativeSunset Technologies27/2012 9:49:20 AMCancelledAdministratorE00466TentativeSunset Technologies22/2012 4:20:54 PMCancelledAdministratorE00465TentativeSunset Technolog
227/2012 12 02:46 PMCancelledAdministratorE00476TentativeSunset Technologies227/2012 11:02:42 PMCancelledAdministratorE004779/20/2012TentativeLadtech27/2012 11:02:43 PMCancelledAdministratorE00475TentativeSunset Technologies27/2012 11:21:47 AMCancelledAdministratorE00475TentativeNew Account27/2012 11:21:47 AMCancelledAdministratorE00474TentativeNew Account27/2012 9:50:25 AMCancelledAdministratorE00471TentativeSunset Technologies27/2012 9:49:20 AMCancelledAdministratorE004707/13/2012TentativeSunset Technologies27/2012 9:49:20 AMCancelledAdministratorE004687/13/2012TentativeSunset Technologies27/2012 9:39:22 AMCancelledAdministratorE00467TentativeAcoustics Associates22/2012 9:39:22 AMCancelledAdministratorE00467TentativeSunset Technologies22/2012 9:39:22 AMCancelledAdministratorE00467TentativeSunset Technologies22/2012 4:10:6 PMCancelledAdministratorE00466TentativeSunset Technologies22/2012 4:20:54 PMCancelledAdministratorE00465TentativeSunset Technologies22/2012 4:20:28 PMCancelledAdministratorE004636/29/2012TentativeSunset Technologies22/2012 4:20:28 PMCancelledAdministrator
27/2012 1202:42 PMCancelledAdministratorE004779/20/2012TentativeLadtech27/2012 11:30:18 AMCancelledAdministratorE00475TentativeSunset Technologies27/2012 11:21:47 AMCancelledAdministratorE00474TentativeNew Account27/2012 9:50:25 AMCancelledAdministratorE00471TentativeSunset Technologies27/2012 9:50:25 AMCancelledAdministratorE00471TentativeSunset Technologies27/2012 9:49:20 AMCancelledAdministratorE004707/13/2012TentativeSunset Technologies27/2012 9:39:22 AMCancelledAdministratorE004687/13/2012DefiniteAcoustics Associates22/2012 9:39:22 AMCancelledAdministratorE00467TentativeAcoustics Associates22/2012 9:39:22 AMCancelledAdministratorE00467TentativeSunset Technologies22/2012 4:106 PMCancelledAdministratorE00467TentativeSunset Technologies22/2012 4:20:54 PMCancelledAdministratorE00465TentativeNaples Dental Assoc.22/2012 4:20:28 PMCancelledAdministratorE004636/29/2012TentativeSunset Technologies22/2012 4:18:53 PMCancelledAdministratorE004636/29/2012TentativeSunset Technologies22/2012 3:35:44 PMCancelledAdministratorE004636/29/2012TentativeSunset Technologies22/2012 3:35:44 PM
27/2012 11:30:18 AMCancelledAdministratorE00475TentativeSunset Technologies27/2012 11:21:47 AMCancelledAdministratorE00474TentativeNew Account27/2012 9:50:25 AMCancelledAdministratorE00471TentativeSunset Technologies27/2012 9:49:20 AMCancelledAdministratorE004707/13/2012TentativeSunset Technologies27/2012 9:49:20 AMCancelledAdministratorE004607/13/2012TentativeSunset Technologies27/2012 9:39:22 AMCancelledAdministratorE00460TentativeAcoustics Associates22/2012 9:39:22 AMCancelledAdministratorE00460TentativeAcoustics Associates22/2012 9:39:22 AMCancelledAdministratorE00460TentativeAcoustics Associates22/2012 9:39:22 AMCancelledAdministratorE00460TentativeNaples Dental Assoc.22/2012 4:20:39 PMCancelledAdministratorE00465TentativeNaples Dental Assoc.22/2012 4:20:28 PMCancelledAdministratorE004636/29/2012TentativeSunset Technologies22/2012 4:18:53 PMCancelledAdministratorE004636/29/2012TentativeSunset Technologies22/2012 3:35:44 PMCancelledAdministratorE004636/29/2012TentativeSunset Technologies22/2012 3:35:44 PMCancelledAdministratorE004627/13/2012TentativeSunset Technologies
27/2012 11:21:47 AMCancelledAdministratorE00474TentativeNew Account27/2012 9:50:25 AMCancelledAdministratorE00471TentativeSunset Tech.27/2012 9:49:20 AMCancelledAdministratorE004707/13/2012TentativeSunset Technologies27/2012 9:39:22 AMCancelledAdministratorE004687/13/2012DefiniteAcoustics Associates22/2012 5:14:10 PMCancelledAdministratorE00467TentativeAcoustics Associates22/2012 4:41:06 PMCancelledAdministratorE00466TentativeSunset Technologies22/2012 4:40:05 PMCancelledAdministratorE00465TentativeSunset Technologies22/2012 4:20:254 PMCancelledAdministratorE00465TentativeNaples Dental Assoc.22/2012 4:20:28 PMCancelledAdministratorE00464TentativeSunset Technologies22/2012 4:20:28 PMCancelledAdministratorE004636/29/2012TentativeSunset Technologies22/2012 4:18:53 PMCancelledAdministratorE004636/29/2012TentativeSunset Technologies22/2012 3:35:44 PMCancelledAdministratorE004627/13/2012TentativeSunset Technologies
27/2012 9:50:25 AMCancelledAdministratorE00471TentativeSunset Tech.27/2012 9:49:20 AMCancelledAdministratorE004707/13/2012TentativeSunset Technologies27/2012 9:39:22 AMCancelledAdministratorE004687/13/2012DefiniteAcoustics Associates22/2012 5:14:10 PMCancelledAdministratorE00467TentativeAcoustics Associates22/2012 4:41:06 PMCancelledAdministratorE00466TentativeSunset Technologies22/2012 4:40:05 PMCancelledAdministratorE00466TentativeSunset Technologies22/2012 4:20:254 PMCancelledAdministratorE00465TentativeNaples Dental Assoc.22/2012 4:20:28 PMCancelledAdministratorE00464TentativeSunset Technologies22/2012 4:20:28 PMCancelledAdministratorE004636/29/2012TentativeSunset Technologies22/2012 4:18:53 PMCancelledAdministratorE004636/29/2012TentativeSunset Technologies22/2012 3:35:44 PMCancelledAdministratorE004627/13/2012TentativeSunset Technologies
27/2012 9:49:20 AMCancelledAdministratorE004707/13/2012TentativeSunset Technologies27/2012 9:39:22 AMCancelledAdministratorE004687/13/2012DefiniteAcoustics Associates22/2012 5:14:10 PMCancelledAdministratorE00467TentativeAcoustics Associates22/2012 4:41:06 PMCancelledAdministratorE00466TentativeSunset Technologies22/2012 4:40:05 PMCancelledAdministratorE00466TentativeSunset Technologies22/2012 4:20:254 PMCancelledAdministratorE00465TentativeNaples Dental Assoc.22/2012 4:20:28 PMCancelledAdministratorE00464TentativeSunset Technologies22/2012 4:18:53 PMCancelledAdministratorE004636/29/2012TentativeSunset Technologies22/2012 3:35:44 PMCancelledAdministratorE004627/13/2012TentativeSunset Technologies22/2012 3:35:44 PMCancelledAdministratorE004627/13/2012TentativeSunset Technologies
27/2012 9:39:22 AMCancelledAdministratorE004687/13/2012DefiniteAcoustics Associates22/2012 5:14:10 PMCancelledAdministratorE00467TentativeAcoustics Associates22/2012 4:41:06 PMCancelledAdministratorE00466TentativeSunset Technologies22/2012 4:20:54 PMCancelledAdministratorE00465TentativeNaples Dental Assoc.22/2012 4:20:28 PMCancelledAdministratorE00464TentativeSunset Technologies22/2012 4:20:28 PMCancelledAdministratorE00464TentativeSunset Technologies22/2012 4:18:53 PMCancelledAdministratorE004636/29/2012TentativeSunset Technologies22/2012 3:35:44 PMCancelledAdministratorE004627/13/2012TentativeSunset Technologies
22/2012 5:14:10 PMCancelledAdministratorE00467TentativeAcoustics Associates22/2012 4:41:06 PMCancelledAdministratorE00466TentativeSunset Technologies22/2012 4:20:54 PMCancelledAdministratorE00465TentativeNaples Dental Assoc.22/2012 4:20:28 PMCancelledAdministratorE00464TentativeSunset Technologies22/2012 4:20:28 PMCancelledAdministratorE00464TentativeSunset Technologies22/2012 4:18:53 PMCancelledAdministratorE004636/29/2012TentativeSunset Technologies22/2012 3:35:44 PMCancelledAdministratorE004627/13/2012TentativeSunset Technologies
22/2012 4:41:06 PM     Cancelled     Administrator     E00466     Tentative     Sunset Technologies       22/2012 4:20:54 PM     Cancelled     Administrator     E00465     Tentative     Naples Dental Assoc.       22/2012 4:20:28 PM     Cancelled     Administrator     E00464     Tentative     Sunset Technologies       22/2012 4:20:28 PM     Cancelled     Administrator     E00464     Tentative     Sunset Technologies       22/2012 4:18:53 PM     Cancelled     Administrator     E00463     6/29/2012     Tentative     Sunset Technologies       22/2012 3:35:44 PM     Cancelled     Administrator     E00462     7/13/2012     Tentative     Sunset Technologies
22/2012 4:20:54 PM     Cancelled     Administrator     E00465     Tentative     Naples Dental Assoc.       22/2012 4:20:28 PM     Cancelled     Administrator     E00464     Tentative     Sunset Technologies       22/2012 4:18:53 PM     Cancelled     Administrator     E00463     6/29/2012     Tentative     Sunset Technologies       22/2012 3:35:44 PM     Cancelled     Administrator     E00462     7/13/2012     Tentative     Sunset Technologies
22/2012 4:20:28 PM         Cancelled         Administrator         E00464         Tentative         Sunset Technologies           22/2012 4:18:53 PM         Cancelled         Administrator         E00463         6/29/2012         Tentative         Sunset Technologies           22/2012 3:35:44 PM         Cancelled         Administrator         E00462         7/13/2012         Tentative         Sunset Technologies
22/2012 4:18:53 PM         Cancelled         Administrator         E00463         6/29/2012         Tentative         Sunset Technologies           22/2012 3:35:44 PM         Cancelled         Administrator         E00462         7/13/2012         Tentative         Sunset Technologies
22/2012 3:35:44 PM Cancelled Administrator E00462 7/13/2012 Tentative Sunset Technologies
22/2012 3:24:02 PM Cancelled Administrator E00461 Tentative Acoustics Associates
19/2012 11:37:33 AM Cancelled Administrator E00460 Tentative Sunset Technologies
19/2012 11:31:26 AM Cancelled Administrator E00459 6/22/2012 Tentative Sunset Technologies

# **Prints & Reports**

The following can be generated from the **Reports** ribbon tab:

#### General

#### Daily Reader Board

Lists details of all sub-events taking place on the day you indicate. Fields printed include <u>Client</u>, <u>Party Name</u>, <u>Start Time</u>, <u>End Time</u> and <u>Room</u>.

#### Room Cards

Generates cards that can be placed in the entrances or doorways of your function rooms to indicate what parties will be held there. *Fields printed include Client, Party Name, Start Time, End Time, Serving Time, Event Date and Room.* 

#### Monthly Planner

Generates a graphic calendar of an entire month, listing all sub-events taking place on each day. *Fields printed on graphic calendar include <u>Event Number</u>, <u>Client</u> and <u>Guests</u>. <i>Fields printed on subsequent detail pages include <u>Event Number</u>, <u>Client</u>, <u>Phone</u>, <u>Booking Contact</u>, <u>Site Contact</u>, <u>Sales Rep</u>, <u>Theme</u>, <u>Start Time</u>, <u>End Time</u> and <u>Guests</u>.* 

#### Annual Events

Generates a graph of annual events based on the number of events and the value of the events.

#### Active Reminders

Lists all current reminders for whatever user is logged into the program on this computer. *Fields printed include <u>Reminder Date</u>, <u>Client, Client Address, Client Telephone, Client Fax, Contact Person,</u> <u>Event Number</u> (if the reminder is linked to an event), <u>Event Date</u>, <u>Party Name</u>, <u>User Name</u> (who is responsible for the reminder) and reminder details.* 

#### Window

- **Desktop** Prints a screenshot of the entire desktop of this computer.
- Active Window
   Prints a screenshot of whatever program window is currently active.

## **Event Activity**

• Event Activity

Lists all events that have been added or modified during the date range you select. Fields printed include <u>Event Number</u>, <u>Event Date</u>, <u>Client</u>, <u>Booking Contact</u>, <u>Category</u>, <u>Sales Rep</u>, <u>Booked Date</u> and <u>Revised Date</u>.

Event Master

Lists all events taking place on the day and date range you indicate, along with their menu items and location information.

Fields printed include <u>Event Date</u>, <u>Event Number</u>, <u>Event Status</u>, <u>Party Name</u>, <u>Theme</u>, <u>Event Category</u>, <u>Client</u>, <u>Client Address</u>, <u>Contact Person</u>, <u>Telephone</u>, <u>Start Time</u>, <u>End Time</u>, <u>Serving Time</u>, <u>Guests</u>, <u>Room</u>, <u>Setup Style</u>, <u>Offsite Location</u>, and food/service items with quantities.

Event Sheet

Lists details of all events taking place on the day and date range you indicate. *Fields printed include <u>Event Date</u>, <u>Event Number</u> (with <u>Status</u>), <u>Client Name</u>, <u>Theme</u>, <u>Event Category</u>, <u>Sales</u>*  <u>Rep</u>, <u>Booking Contact</u>, <u>Sub-Event Date</u>, <u>Sub-Event Description</u>, <u>Start Time</u>, <u>End Time</u>, <u>Serving Time</u>, <u>Guests</u>, <u>Room</u> and <u>Site Name</u>.

#### Event Checklist

Lists all duties that pertain to events taking place on the day and date range you indicate. *Fields printed include <u>Checklist Item</u>, <u>Due Date</u>, notation if done, name of who it was done by and any checklist item notes.* 

#### Event Cancellations

Lists all cancelled events that were scheduled to take place on the day and date range you indicate. *Fields printed include reason for cancellation*, <u>Event Number</u>, <u>Client</u>, <u>Event Date</u>, <u>Booking Contact</u>, <u>Telephone</u>, <u>Sales Rep</u>, <u>Theme</u>, <u>Cancellation Date</u>, <u>Cancellation Charge</u> and total <u>Event Value</u>.

#### Event Bookings

Generates a report of all event bookings. The report can be grouped and sorted.

#### Event Conflicts

Generates a list of all room and staffing conflicts.

#### Audit Trail

Generates an audit trail, which can include any changes made to events, sub-events, food/service items, shifts, etc., and can be grouped and sorted as desired.

## Forecasting

#### Revenue Forecast

Lists financial information for all events taking place on the day and date range you indicate, including breakdowns for food, beverage, liquor, equipment, etc.

Fields printed include <u>Client</u>, <u>Event Number</u>, <u>Date</u>, <u>Food Total</u>, <u>Beverage Total</u>, <u>Liquor Total</u>, <u>Equipment</u> <u>Total</u>, <u>Labor Total</u>, <u>Room Total</u>, <u>Other Total</u>, <u>Subtotal</u>, <u>Service Charge</u>, <u>Tax</u> and <u>Total</u>.

#### Forecast to Actual Sales

This report, which allows you to determine if the actual sales for a particular year compare with the predicted sales for a particular year, can be based on the company as whole or particular sales rep.

#### Yearly Sales Comparison

This report allows you to generate a comparison, based on a particular year as compared with the current year.

#### Sub-Events Revenue

Lists financial breakdown for all sub-events taking place on the day and date range you indicate.

#### Consolidated Annual Sales

Gives your total monthly sales for the year based on one of several criteria: Event Category, Event Theme, Account City, etc.

Fields printed include the <u>Category</u>, <u>Theme</u> or whatever criteria you base the report on; totals for each month including any combination of subtotal, tax and service charge you choose; and a similar total for the year.

#### Grouped Events

Shows a bar graph for a quick comparison of what references or marketing strategies have brought you the most business. Also on the report is a list of general details about each event, grouped by reference. *Fields printed include <u>Event Number</u>*, <u>Client</u>, <u>Event Date</u>, <u>Booking Contact</u>, <u>Telephone</u>, <u>Sales Rep</u>, <u>Theme</u>, <u>Subtotal</u>, <u>Service Charge</u>, <u>Tax</u> and <u>Total</u>.

#### Top Sales

This report provides a breakdown of top sales associated with a particular Client (up to the top 50), and is grouped by number of events and total revenue.
# Financials

### Commission Sales

Lists financial information and sales commission information for all events taking place on the day and date range you indicate. These events are grouped on the report by sales representative and according to status ("Definite", "Tentative" or "Cancelled").

Fields printed include <u>Sales Rep</u>, <u>Event Status</u>, <u>Event Number</u>, <u>Client</u>, <u>Date</u>, <u>Food Total</u>, <u>Beverage Total</u>, <u>Liquor Total</u>, <u>Equipment Total</u>, <u>Labor Total</u>, <u>Room Total</u>, <u>Other Total</u>, <u>Service Charge</u>, the commission for each of these totals (based on the default commission percentage you have entered) and an overall <u>Event</u> <u>Total</u>.

## Deposits Due

Lists all events with deposits due in a certain date range, as well as amounts and due dates of those deposits. *Fields printed include the following fields for both deposits paid and due: <u>Event Number</u> (with <u>Status</u>), <u>Event</u> <u>Date</u>, <u>Client</u>, <u>Phone</u>, <u>Booking Contact</u>, <u>Sales Rep</u>, <u>Deposit Due Date</u>, <u>Due Amount</u>, <u>Paid Date</u> and <u>Paid</u> <u>Amount</u>.* 

### Payments Made

Lists all events where payments were posted during the date range you select. Payment information is also on the print, including method of payment, amount, due date and any comment. *Fields printed include Pay Date, Client, Event Number, Pay Method, Comment, Event Date, Pay Amount, Event Total and Booking Contact.* 

### Accounts Receivable

"Accounts receivable" pertains to all events where the event date has passed, and yet they still owe you money. The Accounts Receivable report lists all events with money due whose event dates fall before your selected date. You can choose to ignore payments made after that date to get a true accounts receivable "as of" report. *Fields printed include <u>Sales Rep</u>, <u>Event Number, Client, Event Date, Theme, Total, Paid and Balance</u>.* 

# Management

### Employee Staffing

Lists all events that your employees are schedule to work for a specific day or date range. *Fields printed include <u>Event Date</u>, <u>Employee, Employee Telephone, Employee Number, Position, Event</u> <u>Number, Client, Room, Start Time, End Time, Hours, Wage, Total Wage</u>. Also available is the Employee Diary, including the following information: <u>Employee Name, Employee Number, Event Date, Position, Start</u> <u>Time, End Time, Event Number, Client, Client Address, Client Telephone, Room, Party Name, Event Theme</u>.* 

### Scheduled Shifts

Lists specific shifts and staffing details.

### Event Deliveries

Lists all events with delivery times on the day and date range you indicate, along with their menu items that require delivery and any notes or delivery personnel.

Fields printed include <u>Event Date</u>, <u>Event Number</u>, <u>Event Status</u>, <u>Client</u>, <u>Client Address</u>, <u>Client Telephone</u>, <u>Party Name</u>, <u>Event Theme</u>, <u>Event Category</u>, <u>Delivery Time</u>, <u>Start Time</u>, <u>End Time</u>, <u>Sub-Event Description</u>, <u>Guests</u>, <u>Delivery Person</u>, <u>Setup Person</u>, <u>Site Name</u>, <u>Room</u>, <u>Setup Style</u>, <u>Delivery Items</u>, <u>Delivery Notes</u>.

### Rooms Booked

Lists details of all events taking place in function rooms on the day and date range you indicate. *Fields printed include Event Number, Event Date, Client, Booking Contact, Room, Theme, Guests, Start Time, End Time, Serving Time, Setup Time and Tear Down Time.* 

# Scheduled Items

Provides a list of scheduled items (tables, bowling lanes, etc.), that have been scheduled. Can be grouped and displayed in graph format.

### Food/Service Items

Lists all food and service items ordered for events taking place on the day and date range you indicate. *Fields printed include <u>Event Date</u>*, <u>Event Number</u>, <u>Menu Item Name</u>, <u>Item Type</u>, <u>Item Category</u>, <u>Account Code</u>, <u>Price</u>, <u>Quantity</u>, <u>Total</u> and optionally <u>Prep Area</u>.

### Weekly Kitchen Plan

Provides a weekly list of items that are to be prepared, and the corresponding quantity.

### Top Food/Service Sales

Provides a breakdown of the top-selling items (up to the top 50), and can optionally be sorted by quantity and value of items.

### Required Items

Lists all required items for all events taking place on the day and date range you indicate. Fields printed include <u>Description of Required Item</u>, <u>Quantity</u>, <u>Measure</u>, <u>Conversion</u>, <u>Associated Menu Item</u>, <u>Event Number</u>, <u>Event Date</u> and <u>Client</u>.

### Ingredients

Lists all ingredients for menu items in events taking place on the day and date range you indicate. *Fields printed include <u>Description of Ingredient</u>, <u>Quantity</u>, <u>Measure</u>, <u>Conversion</u>, <u>Associated Menu Item</u>, <u>Event</u> <u>Number</u>, <u>Date</u> and <u>Client</u>.* 

## Graphs

- Accounts Receivable Show receivables and corresponding events in donut and bar graphs, grouped by days outstanding.
- **Current Events** Shows two bar graphs indicating number and value of events, grouped by days out.

### Accounts

- Account List (Events) A list of all accounts and their associated events, that have booked an event with you.
- Account List (Guests) A list of all accounts and their associated guestrooms, that have been booked with you. (Pertains to the Guestrooms Manager module).
- **Inactive Accounts** List of accounts that have never booked an event with you.
- Account Origination This report generates a list of all account bookings. *Fields printed include <u>Client</u>; <u>Address</u>; <u>Phone</u>; <u>Fax</u>; <u>Sales Rep</u>; <u>Category</u>; and <u>Primary Contact.</u>*
- Total Accounts Receivable A list of your accounts receivables as of a particular date.

# **Contact Manager**

• Total Contacts Made

Lists all contact history items for a day or date range. The report can be generated for one user or all users, and can be grouped as desired.

Total Reminders

Lists all reminders for a day or date range.

## Menu Manager

- Menu Items Usage This report lists all menu items that have been used over a certain period of time.
- Menu List (By Category)

This report lists all menu items, by category (if the menu items have been placed into a category.)

### **Guestrooms Manager**

#### Guestrooms Control Log

This report allows you to track all group bookings. This report can be customized to exclude certain statuses, and can be grouped by selected criteria.

#### • Guestrooms Breakdown

This report allows you to track guestrooms by a particular date range, and group them by group type or contract number.

#### • Deposits Due

This report allows you to check all deposits made for a particular date range. You can optionally exclude contracts with a particular status.

#### • Payments Made

This report allows you to check all payments received for a particular date range.

#### • Accounts Receivable

The Accounts Receivable report lists, in bar graph view and in detail view, all group bookings with money due whose event dates fall before your selected date.